



# **Siebel Order Management Guide**

Version 7.7, Rev. A  
May 2004

Siebel Systems, Inc., 2207 Bridgepointe Parkway, San Mateo, CA 94404  
Copyright © 2004 Siebel Systems, Inc.  
All rights reserved.  
Printed in the United States of America

No part of this publication may be stored in a retrieval system, transmitted, or reproduced in any way, including but not limited to photocopy, photographic, magnetic, or other record, without the prior agreement and written permission of Siebel Systems, Inc.

Siebel, the Siebel logo, TrickleSync, Universal Agent, and other Siebel names referenced herein are trademarks of Siebel Systems, Inc., and may be registered in certain jurisdictions.

Other product names, designations, logos, and symbols may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

**PRODUCT MODULES AND OPTIONS.** This guide contains descriptions of modules that are optional and for which you may not have purchased a license. Siebel's Sample Database also includes data related to these optional modules. As a result, your software implementation may differ from descriptions in this guide. To find out more about the modules your organization has purchased, see your corporate purchasing agent or your Siebel sales representative.

**U.S. GOVERNMENT RESTRICTED RIGHTS.** Programs, Ancillary Programs and Documentation, delivered subject to the Department of Defense Federal Acquisition Regulation Supplement, are "commercial computer software" as set forth in DFARS 227.7202, Commercial Computer Software and Commercial Computer Software Documentation, and as such, any use, duplication and disclosure of the Programs, Ancillary Programs and Documentation shall be subject to the restrictions contained in the applicable Siebel license agreement. All other use, duplication and disclosure of the Programs, Ancillary Programs and Documentation by the U.S. Government shall be subject to the applicable Siebel license agreement and the restrictions contained in subsection (c) of FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software - Restricted Rights (June 1987), or FAR 52.227-14, Rights in Data—General, including Alternate III (June 1987), as applicable. Contractor/licensor is Siebel Systems, Inc., 2207 Bridgepointe Parkway, San Mateo, CA 94404.

**Proprietary Information**

Siebel Systems, Inc. considers information included in this documentation and in Siebel eBusiness Applications Online Help to be Confidential Information. Your access to and use of this Confidential Information are subject to the terms and conditions of: (1) the applicable Siebel Systems software license agreement, which has been executed and with which you agree to comply; and (2) the proprietary and restricted rights notices included in this documentation.

# Contents

## **Chapter 1: What's New in This Release**

## **Chapter 2: Overview of Order Management**

About Order Management	11
The Order Management Life Cycle	11
Scenario for Order Management	12
Setup and Use of Siebel Order Management	13
Basic Concepts of Order Management	15
Basic Concepts for Asset-Based Ordering	17
Customer Profile in Asset-Based Ordering	18
Quote and Order Concepts in Asset-Based Ordering	19
Workflows and Business Services for Asset-Based Ordering	21

## **Chapter 3: Setting Up Order Management**

Process of Setting Up Order Management	23
Setting Up Accounts and Contacts for Order Management	24
Setting Up Salespeople	25
Setting Up Products, Pricing, and Catalogs	25
Setting Up Shipping Information	26
Setting Up Tax Calculations	27
Setting Up Payment Terms and Other Payment Factors	28
Setting Up Inventory Locations	31
Setting Up Integration and Activating Workflows	31
Setting Up Order Types	31
Defining Order Statuses	32
Creating Product Selection Templates	33
Setting Up Activity Plan Templates	34
Letting Users Create Quotes and Orders from Accounts and Contacts	34
Setting Up Availability to Promise	35
Customizing the Sales, Quote, and Order Processes	35
Setting Up Asset-Based Ordering	38
Lists of Values to Update for Order Management	39

Adding or Changing the Display Value of Order Types 40

### **Chapter 4: Preparing for Integration**

Integration Strategy for Order Management 43

ASIs for Order Management 44

Setting Up Quote and Order ASIs 46

    Setting Up Web Services for Quote and Order ASIs 47

    Activating Workflows for Quotes and Orders 49

Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications 49

    Checking the Availability Fulfillment Methods 50

    Setting the ATP Action Parameter in Quote and Order Business Components Properties 50

    Verifying the External ATP Check Business Service User Properties 52

    Configuring Web Services 52

    Using the ATP ASI Testing Script 54

    Preventing Rollup of Availability Information 54

    Extending the ASI 55

    Extending Returned Data 56

    Customizing UI Terms 56

Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications 57

    Verifying the External Credit Check ASI User Properties 58

    Configuring Web Services for Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications 58

    Activating the Workflow Processes for Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications 59

    Modifying User Properties for Purchase Order Credit Checking Integration 60

    Turning Off Credit Checking 60

    Customizing When Credit Checks Are Performed 60

    Changing the Credit Auto-Approval Limit For Accounts 61

    Skipping Credit Checks For an Account 61

    Restricting Which Employees Can Administer Credit Checking 62

    Extending the ASI for Credit Check Interface Request 62

ASI Workflows for Quotes and Orders 63

### **Chapter 5: Creating a Quote or Order**

Process of Creating a Quote 65

    Starting a Quote 65

    Using Auto Quote from an Opportunity 67

    Performing Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders 68

    Verifying the Quote 68

Process of Creating an Order 68

Starting an Order	69
Performing Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders	71
Submitting an Order	71
Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders	71
Adding Products to a Quote or Order	71
Working With Line Items of Quotes and Orders	77
Viewing and Recalculating Prices	79
Applying a Manual Discount	84
Adding Shipping Information	88
Calculating Shipping Charges	89
Calculating Taxes	90
Checking Availability to Promise (ATP)	91
Working with Payment Information for Quotes or Orders	93

## **Chapter 6: Working with Quotes**

About Quotes	107
Verifying a Quote	108
Updating an Opportunity from a Quote	108
Including Quote Items in a Forecast	109
Accessing An Existing Quote	109
Revising a Quote	110
Converting a Quote to an Order	110
Converting a Quote to an Agreement	111
Displaying Charts to Analyze Quotes	111

## **Chapter 7: Working with Orders**

About Orders	113
Accessing An Existing Order	114
Submitting an Order	114
Associating an Activity Plan or Activity with an Order	115
Approving an Order	116
Monitoring an Order	116
Revising an Order	117
Processing a Return	118

## **Chapter 8: Data Validation for Order Management**

- About Data Validation Manager 119
- Process of Implementing Data Validation Processing 120
- Process of Administering Data Validation Rules 120
  - Defining a Data Validation Rule Set 121
  - Defining Rule Set Arguments 123
  - Defining Validation Rules 124
  - Defining Validation Rule Actions 127
  - Activating a Data Validation Rule Set 128
- Process of Invoking the Data Validation Manager Business Service 128
  - Invoking Data Validation Manager from a Runtime Event 128
  - Invoking Data Validation Manager from a Workflow 130
  - Viewing a Validation History 133

## **Chapter 9: Using Asset-Based Ordering**

- About Asset-Based Ordering 135
- Scenario for Asset-Based Ordering 136
- Creating a Quote 136
- Creating a Quote That Modifies an Asset 138
- Ungrouping Quote Line Items (End User) 138
- Editing Quote Line Items 139
- Updating an Opportunity From a Quote 140
- Converting Quotes to Orders 141
- Editing Order Line Items 141
- Submitting an Order 142
- Revising a Submitted Order 142
- Creating a Follow-On Order 144
- Modifying the Service Profile 144
- Deactivating an Installed Asset 145
- Suspending and Resuming Service 146

## **Chapter 10: Workflows for Asset-Based Ordering**

- About Workflows for Asset-Based Ordering 147
- Workflow to Ungroup Quote Line Items 148

Workflow to Ungroup Order Line Items	148
Workflow to Edit Quote Line Items	149
Workflow to Convert a Quote to an Order	151
Workflow to Edit Order Line Items	153
Workflow to Submit an Order	155
Workflow to Apply an Order to the Service Profile	156
Workflows to Modify the Service Profile	158
Workflows to Redisplay the Service Profile	160
Workflows to Modify a Service Item	161
Workflows to Disconnect a Service Item	167
Workflows to Suspend or Resume Service Items	170

## **Chapter 11: Business Service Methods Reference**

About Business Services for Order Management	175
Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods	175
User Properties used by PMT Methods	179
Delta Method	181
Apply Method	192
Trim Method	203
Explode Method	206
Explode Siebel Object Method	209
Find Orders Method	210
Logical Delete Method	211
Assign New Service IDs Method	212
Convert Product Instance Method	213
Get Instance Method	214
Get Profile Attribute Method	215
Is Fully Exploded Method	215
Is Module Licensed Method	216
Merge Method	217
Quote To Revenue Method	217
Reconfigure Product Instance Method	221
Reset Method	223
Retrieve Next Object From List Method	223
Set Action Method	224
Set Exception Error Message Method	225
Set Field Value Method	225
Set Multiple Field Values Method	226

## Contents

Set Output Header Method	227
Set Product Instance Method	227
Set Profile Attribute Method	228
Synchronize Method	228
Update Multi Object List Method	229
Update Order Line Item Completed Flag Method	230
Get Cfg Button Click Information Method	231
Refresh Business Component Method	231
Invoke BC Method	232
Iterate Process For Selected Rows Method	232
Get Selected Row Count Method	233
Get First Selected Row Values Method	234
Ungroup Method	234
Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods	236
CreateAccount Method	237
CreateOrder Method	238
GetBCCount Method	239
GotoView Method	240
SelectPrimary Method	240
SetLIAccounts Method	241
SubmitOrder Method	241
ValidatePayment Method	242
ValidateQuote Method	243
ViewCart Method	244

## Index



# 1

## What's New in This Release

### What's New in Siebel Order Management Guide, Version 7.7, Rev. A

Minor editorial changes.

### What's New in Siebel Order Management Guide, Version 7.7

Table 1 lists changes described in this version of the documentation to support version 7.7 of the software.

Table 1. New Product Features in Siebel Order Management Guide, Version 7.7, Rev. A

Topic	Description
<a href="#">"Adding or Changing the Display Value of Order Types" on page 40</a>	Added this topic about configuring order types.
<a href="#">"Applying a Manual Discount" on page 84</a>	Revised information about spreading a discount among line items to describe spread discount enhancements for version 7.7.
<a href="#">"Creating a Follow-On Order" on page 144</a>	Added this topic describing how to create follow-on orders.
<a href="#">"Suspending and Resuming Service" on page 146</a>	Added this topic describing how to create, suspend and resume orders, new features for version 7.7.
Chapter 8, "Data Validation for Order Management"	Added this chapter describing the data validation business service.
Chapter 10, "Workflows for Asset-Based Ordering"	Updated this chapter to reflect changes in workflows for 7.7.
Chapter 11, "Business Service Methods Reference"	Updated this chapter to reflect changes in methods for 7.7.



# 2

## Overview of Order Management

This chapter provides a summary of the general order management process, and introduces the specific concepts and capabilities available through Siebel Order Management.

**NOTE:** Many order management features are available in Siebel eSales and Siebel Partner Portal applications. This book focuses on order management features in employee applications such as Siebel Sales and Siebel Call Center. For details about Siebel eSales and Siebel Partner Portal, see *Siebel eSales Administration Guide* and *Siebel Partner Relationship Management Administration Guide*.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- "About Order Management" on page 11
- "The Order Management Life Cycle" on page 11
- "Scenario for Order Management" on page 12
- "Setup and Use of Siebel Order Management" on page 13
- "Basic Concepts of Order Management" on page 15

### About Order Management

Siebel Order Management allows employees such as salespeople and call center agents to create quotes and manage quotes and orders through their entire life cycle. Siebel Order Management can be tightly integrated with back-office systems, allowing users to perform tasks such as checking credit and confirming availability, as well as monitoring the fulfillment process.

Asset-based ordering allows quotes and orders to be created based on a customer's existing assets. Asset-based ordering is particularly useful in supporting companies whose product offerings include complex service products, such as phone services and equipment.

Siebel Order Management allows employees to:

- Create quotes and orders for new products and services
- Create quotes and orders to modify existing products and services
- Modify in-process orders that have been submitted for fulfillment
- Generate order information for submission to back office billing and fulfillment systems

### The Order Management Life Cycle

The order management life cycle includes tasks that fall into several groups:

- **Preorder Tasks.** Can include creating accounts, contacts, and opportunities or helping anonymous customers through the needs-analysis process.
- **Order Entry Tasks.** Can include selecting products and services, capturing quotes and orders, verifying products and pricing, checking availability to promise, entering shipping, tax, and payment information, and performing a credit check.
- **Order Monitoring Tasks.** Can include providing the customer with order status, notifying the customer that the order has shipped, creating supplemental orders, and monitoring or modifying activities that support the order, such as installation.

The order management life cycle is shown in Figure 1.

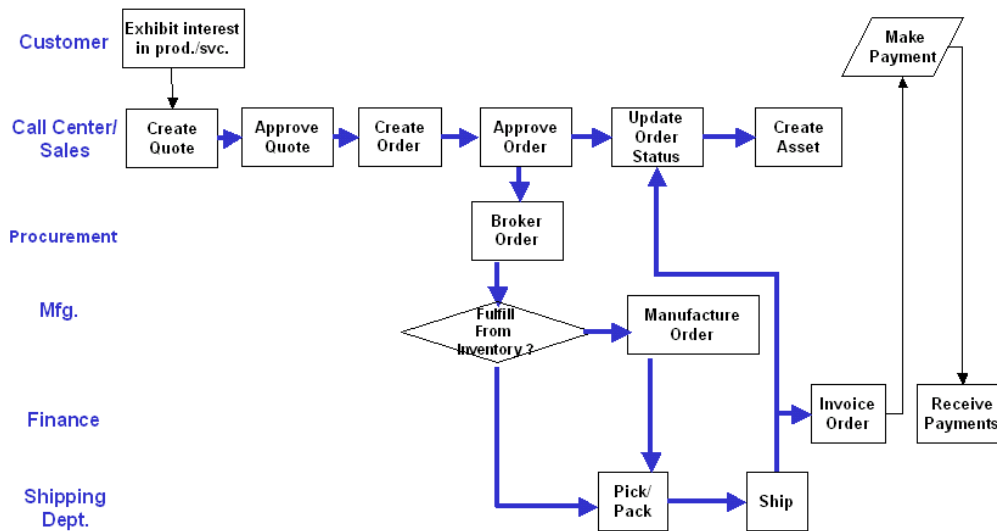


Figure 1. Order Management Life Cycle

## Scenario for Order Management

This scenario provides an example of how order management can be used. Your company may follow a different process according to its business requirements.

As your customers express interest in your products and services, you can keep track of that information and help them identify the appropriate solution. A salesperson can create an opportunity and record the best solution to meet the customer’s needs.

Once the best solution is identified, you can provide a quote provided that details the products and their prices. A salesperson may convert an opportunity to a quote, or create a quote manually. Products and services can be customized so that the customer can specify exactly what options they are interested in and can see the associated prices.

Once a customer accepts a quote, it can be converted to an order. Alternatively, a salesperson may create an order directly, without creating a quote.

The salesperson can enter shipment information and check on the availability of the items. If an order contains a number of items, availability can be checked for each line item.

The salesperson can perform tasks such as calculating tax and shipping costs, verifying payment information, checking the customer's credit, and authorizing their use of a credit card.

The salesperson may perform final tasks such as attaching electronic documents to the order, such as a purchase order or a letter of credit, and generating service activities related to the order such as installation.

The salesperson submits the order.

If appropriate, the order can be routed for approval by a supervisor.

An acknowledgement of the order can automatically be sent to the customer by email.

If you are using asset-based ordering, when the order has been filled, the appropriate product line items become assets. Assets are associated with the customer's account and are a central part of the customer's service profile.

If you are using asset-based ordering, not all products in an order convert to assets. For example, when an order for telephone service is provisioned, installation is a line item of the phone service product, but it does not become an asset. You can specify what products will become trackable assets through the Product Administration screen.

If customers change their minds and want to revise an order before it has been fulfilled, the change can be handled by modifying unsubmitted orders or by creating supplemental orders that revise submitted orders.

As a customer's needs evolve over time, the customer may request additions and changes to the products and services they have. To make these changes, new quotes and orders can be based on the current items in the customer's profile. Requests for changes to existing services are called *delta quotes* or *delta orders*.

**NOTE:** Although end users may start the order management process at a number of different screens and views, the underlying order management cycle is essentially the same.

## Setup and Use of Siebel Order Management

This section summarizes the process of setting up and using Siebel Order Management, which is covered in detail in the rest of this book.

### Setup of Siebel Order Management

The process of setting up order management includes setting up customer accounts and contacts, creating records for sales people, defining products, setting up pricing structures, and developing a catalog of products and services. Your Siebel Sales and Call Center applications draw on this information as customers request quotes and place orders.

For details about the setup tasks required for order management, see [Chapter 3, "Setting Up Order Management."](#)

### Integration

As part of setting up Siebel Order Management, you integrate with third-party applications that are used to integrate quotes and orders with the back office, check product availability to promise, and check customer credit.

For details about integration with third-party applications, see [Chapter 4, "Preparing for Integration."](#)

### End Users' Work with Quotes and Orders

Siebel Order Management allows end users to create quotes and orders from many different screens within your Siebel application. Sales representatives can create an opportunity and use it to generate a quote, can create a quote directly, or can create an order directly, without previously having an opportunity or a quote. Salespeople can also add line items to the quote or order in different ways, depending on whether the user knows the product number, wants to browse through a catalog, or wants assistance selecting the product from Advisor.

The processes for developing quotes and orders are very similar. With each, users can add line items and provide discounts, enter payment information, check availability to promise, and enter shipping information.

For detailed instructions showing how users can work with quotes and orders, see:

- [Chapter 5, "Creating a Quote or Order"](#)
- [Chapter 6, "Working with Quotes"](#)
- [Chapter 7, "Working with Orders"](#)

### Asset-Based Ordering

If you use asset-based ordering, your Siebel application can be configured to automatically create an Asset record when an order is placed, and it allows you to create quotes and orders based on assets. This is useful if your business continues to provide ongoing service to the asset after the customer has purchased it and sells other products connected with existing assets.

For example, if you sell local telephone service, you would use asset-based ordering to create asset records to represent the current status of the telephone service (such as options and features selected). These asset records can then be used as a baseline to generate quotes and orders to modify or disconnect those existing services.

Because asset-based ordering features are workflow-based, they can be easily customized to meet the specific needs of your company.

For background concepts about asset-based ordering, see ["Basic Concepts for Asset-Based Ordering" on page 17](#).

For more information about asset-based ordering, see [Chapter 9, "Using Asset-Based Ordering."](#)

For more information about the workflows used by asset-based ordering, see [Chapter 10, "Workflows for Asset-Based Ordering."](#)

# Basic Concepts of Order Management

This section describes basic features and concepts that are useful as background to your work with Siebel Order Management.

For concepts that are specific to asset-based ordering, see ["Basic Concepts for Asset-Based Ordering" on page 17](#).

## Quote and Order Header Summaries

Header summaries appear at the top of the Quote Detail and Order Detail views and remain in place even when users select different view tabs and work with subviews to perform various tasks. These two-row forms contain key information fields that users frequently need to refer to during the quote and order process, such as the Quote or Order number, name, price list, total price, and status.

## Product Selection

Users can add products to quotes and orders that have been carefully defined in the Product Administration screen, so that they appear correctly in the quote or order. Product selection methods include:

- Adding an individual item in a line item record
- Adding multiple items with the Add Items button
- Browsing a catalog and selecting items
- Using Advisor, a needs analysis tool, to help select a product
- Selecting a template of products to be added at once
- Adding a series of items and then grouping them as a package to offer an appropriate package discount
- Writing in an item that hasn't been defined

For details about these different selection methods, see ["Adding Products to a Quote or Order" on page 71](#).

## Pricing and Discounts

When products are added to a quote or order, their prices are based on the price list associated with the order. The default price list is typically based on the account, but sales representatives can also select a price list in the quote or order. If you have Siebel Pricer, pricing rules and factors may affect the prices shown. Sales representatives can also offer manual discounts for individual line items or for the entire order instead of the pricing shown. For details about pricing and discounts, see ["Viewing and Recalculating Prices" on page 79](#).

## Calculating Taxes

Tax rates and tax exemption information can be entered manually, or you can integrate with third-party tax software to determine tax rates.

### Availability of Products

The sales representative can check availability of products for the customer. Customers can request particular delivery dates, indicate whether partial shipments are acceptable, and specify fulfillment from particular inventory sources. The sales representative can use the availability-to-promise features include the ability to see if the items are available and to reserve them in the back office. For more information about checking availability, see [“Checking Availability to Promise \(ATP\)” on page 91](#).

### Shipping and Delivery Information

Ship-to information, delivery method, and carrier can all impact total cost. This information can be detailed in the quote or order and shipping costs can be calculated by accessing a third-party system. Actual delivery information returned from a third-party or back-office system updates the order. For details, see [“Adding Shipping Information” on page 88](#) and [“Calculating Shipping Charges” on page 89](#).

### Multiple Methods of Payment

By default, Siebel Order Management includes six methods of payment—credit card, purchase order, check, wire transfer, cash, and stored value. Customers can use any of those methods or can use multiple methods of payment. For example, part of an order might be paid with a check and the remainder with a credit card. Information for each method is collected through specialized payment detail forms. For example, credit card payment detail includes credit card number, expiration date, cardholder name, and so forth. Credit cards payments can be authorized by a third party, to validate the customer’s ability to pay. For details about payment methods, see [“Working with Payment Information for Quotes or Orders” on page 93](#).

### Activities and Activity Plans

Before submitting an order, sales representatives can review activities associated with particular line items. For example, if a product requires installation, an activity to schedule the installation can be associated with that line item. If bundles of activities are required, they can be set up in advance as activity plan templates and added all at once.

### Fulfillment Status

After an order has been submitted, sales representatives can check on the order status for customers. Typically, order status information is updated in the Siebel Order Management system regularly. However, a sales representative can also check on the current status, providing the customer with up-to-the-moment information about their order and expected delivery.

### Quote-to-Order

When a customer approves a quote and it becomes an order, an employee end user can convert the quote into an order with the click of a button. When the end user clicks the Sales Order or Service Order button, the following occurs:

- A new order is generated
- All line items in a quote are converted to order line items



After a quote is converted to an order, the original quote still exists and can be referenced, but it will be inactive. The quote number will appear in the order details.

## Revising an Order

Revising an order allows the representative to change an order while maintaining a record of the original order. This can be used by the back office for processing modifications.

## Smart Part Numbers

When interfacing with back-office fulfillment systems, it is very important that each product can be identified. Smart part numbers are used to identify each combination of product ID and product attributes. The smart part number becomes the SKU used in the back office.

You can create smart part numbers manually, or you can interface with an auto-generation system.

The smart part number for each line item appears in the Order screen, in the Line Detail subview associated with the line item.

For more information about smart part numbers, see *Product Administration Guide*.

## Other Concepts

To administer order management, you should also understand these concepts:

- **Product and Pricing.** To administer order management, you should understand product and pricing administration. For more information, see *Product Administration Guide* and *Pricing Administration Guide*
- **Business Process Designer.** If you want to change the order management process by modifying the workflows that drive order management, you should be familiar with Siebel Business Process Designer. For more information, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.
- **Integration.** To plan how to integrate order management into your other systems and processes, refer to the following books:
  - *Overview: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume I*
  - *Integration Platform Technologies: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume II*
  - *Application Services Interface Reference*

# Basic Concepts for Asset-Based Ordering

Asset-based ordering allows companies to:

- Generate asset records from orders
- Create quotes for new products and services based on existing assets
- Create quotes to modify existing products and services
- Modify in-process orders that have been submitted for fulfillment

- Suspend, resume, or discontinue an existing service
- Have visibility into the asset life cycle during customer interactions

Asset-based ordering is included with Siebel Order Management, but it must be activated separately, as described in [“Setting Up Asset-Based Ordering” on page 38](#).

Because asset-based ordering features are workflow-based, they can be easily customized to meet the specific needs of your company. The user interface is described in [Chapter 9, “Using Asset-Based Ordering.”](#) The workflows are described in [Chapter 10, “Workflows for Asset-Based Ordering.”](#)

Figure 2 shows the cycle of events for asset-based ordering.

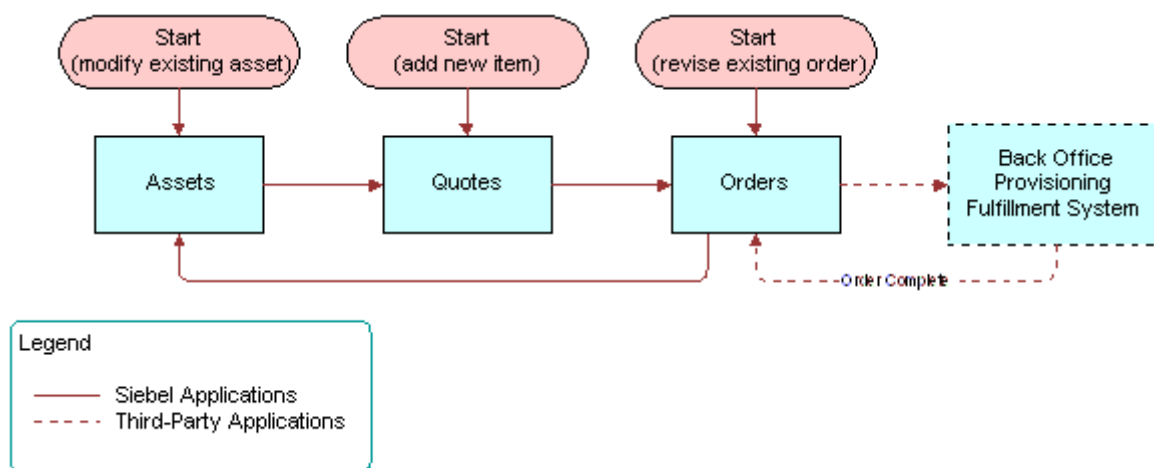


Figure 2. Asset-Based Order Management Cycle

Background concepts that are important if you use the asset-based ordering functionality available in Siebel Order Management are covered in the following topics:

- [“Customer Profile in Asset-Based Ordering” on page 18](#)
- [“Quote and Order Concepts in Asset-Based Ordering” on page 19](#)

## Customer Profile in Asset-Based Ordering

When you have asset-based ordering turned on in Siebel Order Management, end users have access to two views on the Accounts screen that display a customer’s profile:

- **Account Summary.** Gives general information about the customer’s account.
- **Installed Assets.** Lists all installed assets for the account. Installed assets can include both products and services. A line item from an order becomes an installed asset if it is marked as a trackable asset in the product record.

When these views are used with the automated asset-based order workflows, the amount of time to create quotes, orders, and asset records is reduced because many tasks are automated.

The customer’s profile allows the end user to:

- See all the quote and orders for a customer.
- In the Installed Assets list, drill down into each item for additional detail about an asset.
- From the Installed Assets list, start the quote-order process for a new item or service or start the process to modify an existing asset. When the user clicks New, the Quote Line Item list displays.

## Quote and Order Concepts in Asset-Based Ordering

This section describes quote and order concepts that are useful for understanding asset-based ordering.

### New Quotes and Orders

In asset-based ordering, new quotes and orders are those that identify products and services that are first-time acquisitions for a customer or that are repeat orders such as additional software licenses.

After being processed and fulfilled, new quotes and orders result in new assets that become part of a customer's profile. A line item from an order becomes an installed asset if it is marked as a trackable asset in the product record.

### Delta Quotes and Delta Orders

A delta quote or order is usually initiated when the customer asks to make a change to an existing product or service.

For example, the local telephone company provides local phone service to a residential customer. After the service has been installed, customers may want to make additions and changes to the services they receive, such as adding call waiting or changing the number to call when forwarding a call.

Each of these changes is a delta (or change) of the current asset. When the customer inquires about them, the salesperson issues a delta quote for the change. After the customer accepts the delta quote, it becomes a delta order.

### Quote-to-Order Explode Functionality

With asset-based ordering, when a quote is converted to an order, line items with a quantity greater than one can be *exploded*, so that multiple quantities of an item become individual line items. Each line item becomes an individual asset when the order is fulfilled.

### Multiple Open Orders

Multiple orders may be in progress for a particular customer or even a particular service item at any given time.

One benefit of having multiple open orders is that when a customer places an order and then reconsiders and requests different options before the order has been fulfilled, both requests can be placed, tracked, and addressed appropriately.

### Modify Order

A modify order is an order that modifies an asset. When a modify order is placed, it does not modify the asset listed in the customer's profile, because it has not been fulfilled yet. The customer profile is only changed when the order is fulfilled.

### Auto Asset Button

You might see an Auto Asset button on the Orders screen. This button is used for demonstration purposes, to show how order line items can be converted into assets that display in the Service Items view of the customer's service profile.

In actual deployments, a workflow is used to create assets automatically from completed order line items, so this button is not used.

### Action Codes

New action codes for line items on quotes and orders help to keep track of changes made through Modify Orders and Supplemental Orders. These codes are Add, Update, Delete, Suspend, Resume, and -. They appear next to line items on quotes and orders to show which items will be affected, and which will not.

### Supplemental Order

A supplemental order is created by revising an open order. A supplemental order overrides an order that has already been sent to the fulfillment system, is still in process, and has not yet been fulfilled. Supplemental orders are useful when a customer wants to make further changes to an order while it is in transit— that is, before its status is Complete in the fulfillment system.

The following is an example of when a supplemental order can be useful.

A customer currently subscribes to a wireless plan and now wants to change the call-forwarding number associated with the plan. In the Account Summary view, Service Items list, the call center sales representative selects the plan, clicks Modify, and creates a quote for the change. With the customer's approval, the sales representative then converts the quote to an order and submits it. The order is then sent to a fulfillment system. There is now an open order for this item.

An hour later, the customer calls again and wants to back out the change. The call center representative again goes to the Account Summary. In the Orders list, the call center representative drills down into the open order and reviews the order. The employee selects the appropriate line item, makes a change during the configuration session that returns the call-forwarding number to the previous number, and clicks Done to add the change. The employee then submits the supplemental order.

In this case, the change the end user submits is supplemental to the original order.

**NOTE:** Some fulfillment systems do not support supplemental orders. Others only support a limited set of allowed changes. To support the widest possible set of fulfillment systems, your Siebel application supports these types of changes to an order: Add, Delete, Update, and no change.

## Explode and Ungroup Line Items

If you use asset-based ordering, you can automate the ungrouping of multiple quantities of products that will become assets, so that each can be given a unique integration ID. When this feature is turned on, when an end user converts a quote to an order, each line item with a quantity of more than one is *ungrouped* to become multiple items, each with a quantity of one. This automatic ungrouping is referred to as *exploding* the items.

**NOTE:** Ungrouping or exploding items is only required when the items will become trackable assets, and therefore require integration IDs. Items that will not become assets may remain as an order for a multiple quantity, without being ungrouped.

In addition to providing unique integration IDs, the Explode feature can simplify the process of creating complex orders. The following example shows how an end user can take advantage of the Ungroup feature to simplify a bulk order.

The customer wants to order ten local lines, with similar configurations: five will have voice mail, five will have call waiting. The customer wants each of the ten lines to have the same four additional features. An employee end user can start by creating one line item—with the four features that are desired on each of them—and the quantity two. Then, the end user ungroups that item, so that there are two items. Next, the end user takes one of those items, adds voice mail to it, and changes the quantity to five. Then, the user takes the second line item, adds call waiting to it, and changes the quantity of it to five. Finally, the user ungroups both line items, so that there are ten individual line items.

Now each line item has a setting for an integration ID, which is assigned when the line items are created. In addition, each line item has a field for Service ID. Depending on the implementation of the Siebel applications with the back end systems, the employee end user in this example might click a button to populate the field with phone numbers from the asset management system, or a phone number might be assigned as part of the provisioning process.

## Workflows and Business Services for Asset-Based Ordering

Siebel Order Management uses workflows to specify what processes occur—and in what order—in asset-based ordering. When users complete work on a view, these workflows take them to the new view that they need next. For example, when an employee end user clicks the New button on the Installed Assets list, a workflow is launched that displays the Quote details screen and pre-defaults the account information and price list information.

There are two types of workflows in your Siebel application that control complex order management, as follows:

- **Functional.** These workflows provide the business logic such as the setting of different action codes. These workflows are used by both the customer application and the employee application.
- **User Interface.** These workflows control flow from view to view. On this level, the workflows do different things because the views in a Web site are different from the views in an employee application.

You can use Siebel Business Process Designer to modify workflows. You can:

- Use predefined workflow processes to automate and simplify the order processes available to your end users and customers. For example, when an order is filled, a workflow process automatically creates assets from the items and adds them to the customer's service profile in the Accounts screen.
- Customize the predefined workflow processes to match your business processes. For example, some organizations particularly those involved in selling to consumers may want to bypass the Quote step in the New order process and move immediately to an Order.
- Create new workflows to match your own business processes.

For more information about Business Process Manager and how to use it, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

**NOTE:** It is very important that the professionals within your organization responsible for customizing the shipped workflow processes have received the required Business Process Designer training for successful implementation of customized workflows. The in-depth knowledge of this tool is a critical success factor.

For details about the workflows provided with Order Management, see [Chapter 10, "Workflows for Asset-Based Ordering."](#)

These workflows use business services to implement their logic. For information about Order Management business service methods, see [Chapter 11, "Business Service Methods Reference."](#)

# 3

## Setting Up Order Management

This chapter describes how to set up Siebel Order Management features. It provides details about tasks that relate directly to quote and order processes, and cross-references to supporting tasks that are described in other documents.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- [“Process of Setting Up Order Management” on page 23](#)
- [“Lists of Values to Update for Order Management” on page 39](#)
- [“Adding or Changing the Display Value of Order Types” on page 40](#)

**NOTE:** Tasks required to integrate your Siebel application with back-office systems are not included in this chapter. For information about integration tasks, see [Chapter 4, “Preparing for Integration.”](#)

### Process of Setting Up Order Management

There are some tasks that all users perform to set up order management, and there are some additional tasks that you may need to perform depending on your business model.

To set up order management, all users perform the following tasks:

- 1 [“Setting Up Accounts and Contacts for Order Management” on page 24](#). Accounts are used in many quote and order entry tasks, such as selecting the billing and shipping address. When you create accounts, enter the contacts associated with each account, which will be the contacts that are available to select in a quote or order for that account.
- 2 [“Setting Up Salespeople” on page 25](#) Set up sales people as employees and use Sales Order views to associate them with teams. If you have Siebel Incentive Compensation, you can also use Incentive Compensation Administration views to assign them to compensation plans.
- 3 [“Setting Up Products, Pricing, and Catalogs” on page 25](#). To make products available in quotes and orders, you must define products, define price lists that assign prices to products, create product catalogs, and make the catalogs available to users.
- 4 [“Setting Up Shipping Information” on page 26](#). You can define shipping carriers, shipping methods, shipping terms, and set up shipment freight calculation.
- 5 [“Setting Up Tax Calculations” on page 27](#). You can integrate your Siebel application with an external system to calculate taxes due on a quote or an order.
- 6 [“Setting Up Payment Terms and Other Payment Factors” on page 28](#). You can customize payment terms, payment methods, accepted credit card types, and other payment-related factors. Credit card processing is handled through implementation with a third-party payment processing system.

- 7 ["Setting Up Integration and Activating Workflows" on page 31](#). You must set up integration with third party applications used for checking credit. You must activate workflows used for integration of quotes and orders with back office applications. For information about setting up integration and activating workflows, see [Chapter 4, "Preparing for Integration."](#)

In addition, depending on your business model, you may have to perform some of the following tasks to complete setup of order management.

- 1 ["Setting Up Inventory Locations" on page 31](#). If your business model allows orders to specify that products are shipped from a particular inventory location, you must set up inventory locations.
- 2 ["Setting Up Order Types" on page 31](#). If you want to use different order types than the default types, you must set up order types.
- 3 ["Defining Order Statuses" on page 32](#). If you want to use different statuses types than the default types, you must set up order statuses and use the state model to set up rules for modifying orders with each status.
- 4 ["Creating Product Selection Templates" on page 33](#). You can create groupings of products that your users will frequently add to orders.
- 5 ["Setting Up Activity Plan Templates" on page 34](#). You can create templates of activities that should be carried out when particular products are ordered. For example, you can indicate all the installation activities required for a particular order.
- 6 ["Letting Users Create Quotes and Orders from Accounts and Contacts" on page 34](#). There are additional workflows you can activate to allow users to create quotes and orders from the Accounts and Contacts screens.
- 7 ["Setting Up Availability to Promise" on page 35](#). You can integrate your Siebel application with a back-office system to check availability of certain products.
- 8 ["Customizing the Sales, Quote, and Order Processes" on page 35](#). You can customize the processes that employee end users will follow to order products and services. You can use Siebel Business Processes to automate many of the steps in your business processes, and you can customize the predefined business processes.
- 9 ["Setting Up Asset-Based Ordering" on page 38](#). If you want to use asset-based ordering, you must perform additional setup tasks.

## Setting Up Accounts and Contacts for Order Management

The way you set up accounts will affect how users enter shipping and payment information in quotes and orders.

When accounts have multiple locations, they can be set up in one of two ways:

- **Single account for all addresses.** You can create one account and enter multiple addresses entered on the Bill To/Ship To view tab
- **Separate accounts, one for each address.** When you set up separate accounts for each address, you must create an account hierarchy, where one account is the parent account for the other locations.



Consider which account structure is better for your business, so that you can ship to and bill customers correctly. You will want to consider how this is implemented in your back office, so that you can more easily keep information updated between the two systems.

The account structure setup you choose will impact the implementation of your organization's order management processes, as follows:

- **Single account for all addresses.** The account will be the same in all places on the Payment and Fulfillment screens. You can select the appropriate addresses can be selected, as appropriate for billing and shipping. The address fields on quote and order default to the address specified as "primary" in the Addresses view tab for the account.
- **Separate accounts, one for each address.** You can select different accounts as the he bill-to and ship-to entities on the Payment and Fulfillment screens in order to ship to those addresses.

The contacts that you associate with accounts determine the contacts that you can select in Quotes and Orders. Make sure that you attach the contacts to accounts that you want to have available to users when they create orders.

Use the Account screen to enter accounts and attach contacts to them.

For more information about entering accounts and their contacts, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

## Setting Up Salespeople

Before salespeople can create quotes or orders, you must enter the salespeople as employees. For more information about entering employees, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

If you use Siebel Incentive Compensation, you can specify who should receive compensation for an order. For more information, see *Siebel Incentive Compensation Administration Guide*.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

## Setting Up Products, Pricing, and Catalogs

Before employees can create quotes and orders, you must:

- **Set up products.** Define the products that are being sold. If the products have attributes, you can set up a class system to manage the attributes before defining the products. If you have customizable products that have other products as their components, you must specify the components and design the selection pages that users will see.

For information about setting up products, see *Product Administration Guide*.

- **Set up price lists.** Set up price lists and assign prices to products. You can create multiple price lists if you sell the same products to different customers at different prices. You can create discounts, such as volume discounts and discounts for bundles of products. If you have Siebel Pricer, you can create more advanced pricing rules using pricing models and pricing factors.

For information about setting up price lists, see *Pricing Administration Guide*.

- **Set up product catalogs.** End users can select products for customers from product catalogs and add them to a quote or an order. When you create a catalog, you specify what products are included in it and arrange them in a hierarchy of categories. Once catalogs are set up, users can browse through categories to find products, and they can search for products using full-text search or parametric search.

For information about setting up and administering catalogs, see *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*.

- **Assign catalogs to employees.** To assign a catalog to an employee, you associate the catalog with an access group that the user is a member of. An employee is a member of an access group, if the employee is associated with a position, organization, division, account, or user list that is a member of the access group. When displaying a list of products, for example, in parametric search, the employee will see only those products that are in catalogs that have been assigned to that employee.

For information about defining access groups, see *Security Guide for Siebel eBusiness Applications*.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

## Setting Up Shipping Information

To set up shipping information, you should review the default choices and make any additions and changes in the appropriate list of values. In addition, you should make sure the shipping charge calculation is set up correctly.

You define the following shipping information:

- **Carriers.** This field specifies what carrier will be used to deliver items in an order. Out-of-the-box, the available carriers include Airborne, DHL, Emery, Federal Express, UPS, US Mail. Make sure the list of values contains the carriers you want to use. In the List of Values Administration view of the Application Administration screen, carriers are listed in records where the Type field has the value FS\_CARRIER.
- **Shipping methods.** The Shipping Method field is used primarily to identify how quickly the shipment will occur, and how long delivery will take. The shipping method impacts the shipment charges. Out-of-the-box, the available methods are Next Day, 2 Day Service, and Ground. You can add additional methods by adding them in the list of values. For example, you might want Air, Train, or Ship as a method. In the List of Values Administration view of the Application Administration screen, shipping methods are listed in records where the Type field has the value CARRIER\_PRIORITY.

- **Shipping terms.** The Shipping Terms field is used to specify the relationship between payment and shipping. Out of the box, the available shipping terms are Due, FOB, TBD, No charge. You can add additional terms by adding them in the list of values list. In the List of Values Administration view of the Application Administration screen, shipping terms are listed in records where the Type field has the value FREIGHT\_TERMS.
- **Shipment freight calculation.** The result of the shipment freight calculation shows in an order in the Shipping Charges field, in Line Items Totals form. Shipping is calculated at the line level, and is then rolled up for all line items and displayed in the Totals form.

For more information about changing lists of values, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

For information about how shipping charges are calculated and how to change them, see *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

## Setting Up Tax Calculations

Tax calculations can be done manually, or through the Tax Calculator business service, which makes a call to a third-party vendor.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

### Entering Taxes Manually

Users can enter tax information directly in the tax fields, in the Payments view in an order.

In the Payments form, the user will either enter the tax rate or will select a tax exemption code and tax exemption ID, if the customer indicates they are exempt from taxes.

If users enter tax information manually, the only required setup is to define the appropriate tax exempt codes in the list of values.

In the List of Values Administration view of the Application Administration screen, tax exempt codes are listed in records where the Type field has the value GLOBAL\_TAX\_EXEMPTION.

For information about changing lists of values, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

### Using a Third-Party System to Calculate Taxes

You use an external third-party system to calculate taxes on quotes and orders. The Calculate Taxes step calls the Tax Calculator business service, which makes a call to the third-party application.

When using a third-party system, the end user should make sure that the ship-to addresses are correct and then click the Calculate Taxes button on the Line Items Totals form. The amount of the tax will appear on the Total form, and the tax rate will appear in the Payments form. Because ship-to addresses can vary for different line items in an order, the tax rate can also vary for different line items. (For details on the user's experience of this feature, see ["Calculating Taxes" on page 90.](#))

**NOTE:** For customizable products, taxes may be calculated either on the individual components, or on the extended price for the customizable product. The method used is determined by the Tax Subcomponent check box in the Product Administration screen. For more information, see *Product Administration Guide*.

Tax-exempt information can be entered in your Siebel application on the Payments view tab in a quote or order.

However, customers can also file their tax-exempt information with a tax provider for validation. When the third-party tax system contains tax-exempt information, that information is updated when the user clicks Calculate Taxes.

If you want to hide the tax-exempt fields from users, you must customize the Payments form in Siebel Tools. There are three tax-exempt fields: Tax Exempt Flag, Tax Exempt Reason, and Tax Exempt Certification ID.

For details about setting up and using a third-party taxation application, see *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*.

## Setting Up Payment Terms and Other Payment Factors

When you set up order management, you should consider the following payment factors:

- ["Defining Payment Terms" on page 28](#)
- ["Credit Card Processing" on page 29](#)
- ["Credit Card Authorization and Verifications" on page 29](#)
- ["Credit Card Types" on page 29](#)
- ["Defining New Methods of Payment" on page 30](#)
- ["Define a Mailing Address for Check Payment" on page 30](#)

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23.](#)

### Defining Payment Terms

Payment terms are used to specify when payment is due, in relation to the order date or ship date. For example, payment terms might include terms such as Net 10, Net 20, Net 30, Net 60. Users select them on the Payments view tab of a quote or order.

#### **To define a new payment term**

- 1 Navigate to the Payment Terms view of the Administration - Data screen.

- 2 In the Payment Terms list, add a new record.
- 3 Enter a name for this payment term and complete appropriate fields to define the payment terms.

### **To change settings for current payment terms**

- 1 Navigate to the Payment Terms view of the Administration - Data screen.
- 2 In the Payment Terms list, select the appropriate record and make the necessary changes.

## **Credit Card Processing**

Credit card processing is done through integration with a third-party processing system. For details about how to set this up, see *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*.

**NOTE:** Integration for credit card processing is provided with Siebel Order Management. If you want to integrate with a back-office system to provide processing of other payment methods, you can use Siebel Tools to set up new business services to provide this functionality. For more information, see *Using Siebel Tools*.

## **Credit Card Authorization and Verifications**

Your Siebel application comes preconfigured with business services for some third-party services. If you use a different third-party service, you may want to create special Business Services for card authorization and verification.

You can change the use of the following fields:

- **Authorization Code.** The Authorization Code field is not preconfigured to populate automatically. If your back-office system sends an authorization code, you may want to create a business service to interface with Siebel Order Management.
- **Card Verification #:** The credit card verification number is a four-digit unique identifier that is often printed on the back of a credit card. It is used to reduce fraud because only the person holding the card should know it.

**NOTE:** To avoid exposing sensitive data, when implementing credit card verification, consider how to clear the Card Verification # from your database.

## **Credit Card Types**

Siebel Order Management provides these credit card types out-of-the-box: Visa, Mastercard, Discover, and American Express.

You can add more credit card types by entering them as values in the List of Values list. Add a record with the Type PAYMENT\_TYPE CODE, and add a value in the Order field to associate it with a payment method.

In the Order field, the number range for credit cards is 10 to 20. Values 11 through 14 are preconfigured for Visa, Mastercard, Discover, and American Express. You can use a value between 15 and 19 to enter in the Order field for the new credit card, so all the credit cards appear together.

**NOTE:** If you need to add a payment type for a payment method other than credit card, use these value ranges in the Order field:

Check method: 20-29

Stored value method: 40-59

If you create another payment method which requires payment types, use the range 60-80 for the new method.

### **To add new credit card types**

- 1 Navigate to the List of Values view of the Administration - Data screen.
- 2 Create a new record in the List of Values form.
- 3 In the Type field, enter is PAYMENT\_TYPE\_CODE.
- 4 In the Order field, enter a value between 15 and 19 to associate this record with a payment method.

## **Defining New Methods of Payment**

Siebel Order Management comes with these payment methods: cash, credit card, purchase order, stored value, wire transfer, and check. Each method has a predefined set of fields to support the information needed for this method of payment.

**NOTE:** The Orders screen allows more payment method information to be captured and displayed than the Quotes screen. For example, the stored value payment method is not available in a quote, and the fields available for the other methods are limited.

You can add more payment methods. To do so, you need to create an additional entry for the PAYMENT\_METHOD Type in list of values administration, a new table, and an additional applet to support the method. You may also want to require that the user complete particular fields for each payment method. Required fields can be set in Siebel Tools.

## **Define a Mailing Address for Check Payment**

Customers paying by check often need to know where to send the payment. A field in the Payment Detail form for check payments provides a convenient place to display this type of information, so the sales representative can communicate it to the customer. This field is labeled Check Mailing Address in the Payment Detail - Check form in the Order Entry - Payment view.

You can enter the information that should display in this field in Siebel Tools, in the Payments business component, in the user property Check Mailing Address.

## Setting Up Inventory Locations

In some businesses, when users inquire about availability of a product, they can request a particular inventory location, and when products are reserved, they are promised from a particular source.

Inventory locations are used to identify where products are stored and the source from which the product will be fulfilled.

An inventory location may be a warehouse, a trunk, or a field office, or it may be virtual.

For more information about setting up inventory locations and working with inventory, see *Siebel Field Service Guide*.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

## Setting Up Integration and Activating Workflows

You must set up integration with third party applications used for checking credit. You must activate workflows used for integration of quotes and orders with back office applications.

For information about setting up integration and activating workflows, see [Chapter 4, "Preparing for Integration."](#)

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

## Setting Up Order Types

Siebel Orders and Siebel Order Management initially define nine types of orders, as listed in [Table 2](#) below.

You can define additional order types to meet your needs, or you can edit the existing list of values.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

Table 2. Initial Types of Orders

Type of Order	Typical Use
Internal order	An order used to replenish stock or move inventory among inventory locations.
Purchase order	An order used to buy parts from external vendors.
RMA (Return Material Authorization) Advance Exchange	An order used to handle customer returns that require receiving and immediate shipping of exchange parts, before receiving the returned part.
RMA Repair Return	An order used to handle customer returns that require receiving, repairing, and shipping back to customers.
RMA Return	An order used for receiving inbound returns from customers.

Table 2. Initial Types of Orders

Type of Order	Typical Use
Repair order	An order used for ordering, shipping, and receiving parts to be repaired by a third party.
Sales order	A customer order that is owned by, processed by, and credited to a sales business. Typically, selling new finished goods to customers, normally from manufacturing inventory.
Service order	A customer order that is owned by, processed by, and credited to a service business. Typically, a request from a customer for service on existing products, including replacement and repair of parts.
Web Order	A sales order created at a Web site or requested directly over the Internet.

Each order type is either a sales order or a service order. This is determined by the Type Code associated with it in the Data Administration screen, Order Type view.

Each order type has action types associated with it. Action types are used primarily in Siebel Field Service. For more information about action types, see *Siebel Field Service Guide*.

**To define a new order type**

- 1 Add the necessary order types to the List of Values list. In the List of Values List of the Application Administration screen, records for order types have FS\_ORDER\_TYPE in the Type field.  
For more information about managing lists of values, see *Applications Administration Guide*.
- 2 From the application-level menu, select Navigate > Site Map > Data Administration > Order Types.
- 3 In the Order Types list, add a new record.
- 4 In the Order Type field, select a value from the drop-down list.

## Defining Order Statuses

Siebel Orders and Siebel Order Management come with a number of preconfigured order statuses. You can create additional statuses, if you need them, or edit the existing list of values.

See [Table 4 on page 40](#) for the Type field in List of Values Administration that you use to work with this list of values.

For more information about managing lists of values, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

When you create a new order status, you can determine what fields can be changed when an order has that order status. Often these rules mirror back-office constraints. For example, Ship to Address cannot be changed once the order has been picked up or shipped. Similarly, order quantities and details cannot be changed once an order has been submitted.



To specify which fields can be changed depending on order status, you use the state model. For more information about working with state models, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

## Creating Product Selection Templates

Product selection templates are combinations of products, including specific configuration of customizable products, that have been saved for easy reuse. They can then be added to a quote or order at once.

An administrator can set up product templates in advance and make them publicly available. In addition, individual users can create private templates of frequently-used products.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

When you create a product template, it includes the following information about each line item: sequence, description, unit of measure, type, and associated attributes.

To create a product template, you define what products to include, the quantity, and the attributes that should be used as the default.

### **To set up an order template**

- 1** Navigate to the Templates view of the Administration - Data screen.
- 2** In the Product Template List, add a new record.
- 3** Enter a name and description for the template.
- 4** In the Product Template Item List, click the Add Items button to open the Pick Products dialog box.
- 5** In the Pick Products dialog box, follow these steps to define the products you want to include in the template:
  - a** Use the Query function to locate the products you want to include in this template.
  - b** For each product you want to include, enter a number in the Max Order Qty field to specify the maximum quantity that may be ordered at one time.
  - c** For products with attributes, click the Attributes button and define the attributes to be set for the product.

**NOTE:** You can also set and change attributes later. Attributes associated with an item are displayed in list below the Product Template Item List.
  - d** In the Product Template Item List, select each customizable product, click Customize, make any desired changes, and click Done to return to the Product Template List view.
  - e** When you are finished specifying products, click OK.

## Setting Up Activity Plan Templates

In Siebel Order Management, activity templates are useful to itemize the activities that should occur after an order for a particular product is placed or filled. For example, when a product requires installation, you want to make arrangements for the installation when the order is placed.

Activity templates are typically created by an administrator, so that they are available when a sales administrator or call center agent creates an order.

The steps below describe how to create an activity template. For how to associate a template with an order, see ["Associating an Activity Plan or Activity with an Order" on page 115](#).

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

### ***To create an activity plan template***

- 1** Navigate to the Activity Templates view of the Administration - Data screen.
- 2** In the Activity Plan Templates list, add a new record.
- 3** In the Template form, complete the fields.
  - a** Enter a name for the template.
  - b** In the Type field, choose the type Order Entry - Line Items.
  - c** Enter a template description.
  - d** In the Auto Trigger field, select the check box, if appropriate.

This check box provides the activities from this template to a sales stage, when the sales stage is set for an opportunity.
  - e** Select the Public check box if the activity plan may be used by others not on your team.
- 4** Click the Activity Template Details view tab.
- 5** In the Activity Template Details list, add a new record for each required activity, choose an activity type, and then complete the other necessary fields.

## Letting Users Create Quotes and Orders from Accounts and Contacts

There are workflows you may activate if you want users to be able to create quotes and orders from the Accounts screen and the Contacts screen.

For more information, see ["Setting Up Integration and Activating Workflows" on page 31](#).

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Order Management" on page 23](#).

## Setting Up Availability to Promise

You can integrate your Siebel application with a back-office system to check availability of certain products.

For more information, see [“Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications” on page 49](#).

This task is a step in [“Process of Setting Up Order Management” on page 23](#).

## Customizing the Sales, Quote, and Order Processes

You can customize the sales, quote and order process by using:

- [New or Modified Workflows](#)
- [Configuration with Siebel Tools](#)

This task is a step in [“Process of Setting Up Order Management” on page 23](#).

### New or Modified Workflows

Some actions in the Quote and Order screens are set up using Siebel Workflows, such as the following:

- To allow users to create quotes and orders from the Account screen and the Contact screen, you enable a set of workflows.
- To use asset-based ordering, you enable a set of workflows.
- Some of the ASI-based functions that allow you to integrate with back-office systems also use workflows. For example, submitting an order activates a workflow, as does performing a credit check.

You can customize these workflows to carry out the specific processes required for your business. You can also create additional workflows as needed to support your business process.

Here are some examples of changes you might make to customize the order management process using new Siebel Workflows:

- **Quote Verification.** By default, users can verify a quote manually by choosing the Verify menu option from the menu. You can create a Workflow that verifies quotes automatically.
- **Approval Requirements.** Siebel quote and order screens include fields for required approvals which are used manually by default. For example, a salesperson might be required to get a supervisor’s approval for orders above \$500. Out-of-the-box, the salesperson would need to put a manager’s name in the Approved By field. You could create a Workflow that would automatically route an order to the supervisor for approval when the amount exceeded \$500. You would use a combination of Siebel Business Process Designer and Assignment Manager to route the approval to the appropriate supervisor.

- **Customer Acknowledgements.** You can create Workflows to automatically send order confirmations to customers. When the status of an order changes, the Workflows sends the appropriate messages to the customer. Siebel eSales includes out-of-the-box workflows that send acknowledgements to customers, which you can use models to create similar workflows for use in order management. The eSales workflows are:
  - Send Order Accepted Email (eSales). Sent to all users who place an order successfully.
  - Send Order Awaiting Approval Email (eSales). Sent to the purchasing manager for an account when an order with a status of Awaiting Approval needs to be reviewed.
  - Send Order Failed Email (eSales). Sent to a user when an auction is silently closed and turned into an order, but the credit card used cannot be authorized.
  - Send Order Rejected Email (eSales). Sent to a corporate user when the purchasing manager or delegated customer administrator has rejected that corporate user's order.
  - Send Order Shipped Email (eSales). Sent to a user when that user's order has been shipped.

You can also customize Workflows that are shipped with the product, in order to add or remove steps or change the order in which steps are performed. For a reference to these Workflows, which will help you understand them so you can modify them, see ["Workflows for Asset-Based Ordering" on page 147](#)

For more information about creating and customizing Workflows, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

### Configuration with Siebel Tools

You can use Siebel Tools to configure Siebel screens and views to match the processes used in your company. For example, you can define the default view that users see when they log in, so that users start on the screen that they use the most frequently. You can also add, remove, or change the names of fields.

You also can use Siebel Tools to change user properties to customize some order management capabilities.

For more information about Siebel Tools, see *Using Siebel Tools*.

### Component Quantity Edits

Component quantity edits are an example of one possible user property change you might want to make in Siebel Order Management.

Typically, a user changes the quantity of a component in the configuration session that starts after clicking the Customize button in the Line Items list. In this case, Siebel Configurator checks all configuration rules to make sure that the change in quantity is appropriate.

Your company can decide to allow changes to component quantities directly in the Line Items list in the Quote or Order. For this to occur, the user property Configuration ReadOnly Fields must be set in Siebel Tools.

When this user property has been set, the Qty field in line item for components of customizable products is editable. If the Qty field is read-only, then this user property has not been set.

**Other User Properties in Order Management**

Some other user properties that you might want to change to customize order management functionality are listed in [Table 3](#).

Table 3. User Properties in Order Management

User Property	Buscomp or Applet	Function
Check Minimum and Maximum Price	Quote Item, Order Entry - Line Items, FS Agreement Item	Checks minimum and maximum price when making manual adjustments to line item.
Skip Loading Default Cfg Instance	Quote Item, Order Entry - Line Items, FS Agreement Item	Sets to 'Y' to skip the loading if the default configurable product instance when adding a new configurable product to a quote.
Spread Discount - Use Root Product Type	Quote Item, Order Entry - Line Items, FS Agreement Item	If set to 'Y' and spreading a discount by type, spreads on components if the root type is the type selected. Otherwise, spreads on the type of component only if the type of component itself matches the selected spread type.
Add Items Limit To Price List	Internal Product Popup	Limits the products that display in the Add Items dialog box to records contained within the price list.
Configuration ReadOnly Fields	Quote Item List Applet, Order Entry - Line Item List Applet, FS Agreement Item List Applet	Removes the entries for Quantity and Quantity Requested to make the quantity of configurable product components editable within the list applet.
Minimum CC Txn Amount	Payments BusComp	Sets the minimum amount payable by credit card when entering a payment line.
Minimum Cash Txn Amount	Payments BusComp	Sets the minimum amount payable by cash when entering a payment line.
Minimum Check Txn Amount	Payments BusComp	Sets the minimum amount payable by check when entering a payment line.
Minimum Purchase Txn Amount	Payments BusComp	Sets the minimum amount payable by purchase order when entering a payment line.
Minimum Stored Txn Amount	Payments BusComp	Sets the minimum amount payable by stored value when entering a payment line.
Minimum Wire Txn Amount	Payments BusComp	Sets the minimum amount payable by wire transfer when entering a payment line.
Check Mailing Address	Payments BusComp	Mailing address for check.

## Setting Up Asset-Based Ordering

Asset-based ordering is available with the Siebel Order Management module. Asset-based ordering has the following added features:

- The Account Summary and Installed Asset views in the Accounts screen.
- The following buttons that are specific to asset-based ordering:
  - In the Account Summary screen, New, Modify and Disconnect
  - In the Order screen, Submit and Auto Asset
  - In the Quote and Order Line Items view, Customize

**NOTE:** Note that the Submit button on the Order screen and the Customize button on the Quote and Order Line Items view also work when asset-based ordering is turned off. From the user's perspective, the action triggered by clicking these buttons is the same. However, when asset-based ordering is turned on, the buttons perform these actions by running a workflow.

To set up asset-based ordering, you must perform the following tasks:

- 1 [Setting the Server Component Parameter](#). Set the server component parameter *Order Management - Enable Asset Based Ordering* to True
- 2 [Making Changes to the Asset-Based Ordering Workflows](#). If necessary, change the asset-based order workflows to reflect your business needs.
- 3 [Activating the Workflows](#). Activate the asset-based ordering workflows in the Business Process Designer screen.

This task is a step in "[Process of Setting Up Order Management](#)" on page 23.

**NOTE:** In addition, you may want to use Siebel Tools to disable the Delta Quote and Delta Order buttons on the Line Item applets in the Quote and Order detail screens. These buttons provide a limited form of delta quote and delta order functionality, for use when asset-based ordering is not active. With asset-based orders, users should use the Account Summary view to create delta quotes and delta orders.

### Setting the Server Component Parameter

The server component parameter *Order Management - Enable Asset Based Ordering* must be set to True in order to use the asset-based order workflows associated with the Configure and Submit buttons.

#### **To set the server component parameter**

- 1 Navigate to the Server Administration screen.
- 2 Select Components in the Show drop-down.
- 3 Query for the object manager for the application in which you want to use asset-based ordering. For example, you might query for Call Center Object Manager (ENU).
- 4 Click the Component Parameters view tab.

- 5 Query for the parameter *Order Management - Enable Asset Based Ordering*.
- 6 Set the Current Value to True and save by stepping off the record.
- 7 Perform Step 3 through Step 6 for the object manager for each application in which you want to use asset-based ordering.
- 8 Restart the object managers for which you made the change.

## Making Changes to the Asset-Based Ordering Workflows

You can adjust the behavior of asset-based ordering by making changing workflows.

All workflows for asset-based ordering begin with the characters SIS OM. You can access all of these workflows by querying for SIS OM\* in the Business Process Administration screen > Workflow Processes view.

For more information about the asset-based ordering workflows, see:

- [Chapter 9, "Using Asset-Based Ordering"](#) describes the user's view of how asset-based ordering functionality works by default.
- [Chapter 10, "Workflows for Asset-Based Ordering"](#) describes the asset-based ordering workflows.

For information about customizing workflows, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

## Activating the Workflows

You must activate the workflows that provide asset-based ordering features to make those features available. These are the workflows with names that begin with *SIS*.

For information about activating workflows, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

# Lists of Values to Update for Order Management

Many of the changes you will make while setting up order management are implemented by adding to or changing the items available in drop-down lists throughout the order management screens.

The lists of values that relate to order management are shown in [Table 4](#). The third column shows the value of the Type field in the List Of Values Administration view that determines what values are included in each of these lists of values.

For more information about maintaining lists of values, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

Table 4. Lists of Values for Order Management

View	Field	Type Field in LOV Admin
More Info	Order Type	FS_ORDER_TYPE
	Order Status	FS_ORDER_STATUS
	Hold Reason	SAP_SO_HEADER_DELIV_BLOCK
	Return Reason	RETURN_REASON
	Priority	FS_INVLOC_ORDPRI
	Default Discount %	EST_HW_DISC
Line Items/Totals	Shipping Method	CARRIER_PRIORITY
	Shipping Terms	FREIGHT_TERMS
	Carrier	FS_CARRIER
Line Items/Line Detail	Shipping Method	CARRIER_PRIORITY
	Unit of Measure	UNIT_OF_MEASURE
	Hold Reason	SAP_SO_HEADER_DELIV_BLOCK
	Product Status	FS_PRODINVCAT_STATUS
Fulfillment	Available Status	ATP_STATUS
	Return Reason	RETURN_REASON
	Priority	FS_INVLOC_ORDPRI
	Time to Reserve Unit of Measure	PERIOD_UOM
Payments	Tax Exempt Reason	GLOBAL_TAX_EXEMPTION
Payment Detail	Payment Method	MMOP_METHOD_TYPE
	Payment Type	PAYMENT_TYPE_CODE
	Payment Status	MMOP_PAYMENT_STATUS

## Adding or Changing the Display Value of Order Types

If you configure the product using Siebel Tools to add new order types or to change the display value of Order Types, you must perform additional configuration steps for the homepage to work correctly.



**To configure the home page when you add new order types**

- 1** In Siebel Tools, query for *Order Entry - Orders Home Add Virtual Form Applet*.
- 2** Under Drilldown Object, add an entry for the new Order Type.
- 3** Under the Dynamic Drilldown Destination of the original Drilldown Object, add an entry to point to the newly created Drilldown Object.
- 4** Repeat [Step 1](#) to [Step 3](#) for *Order Entry - Orders Home Search Virtual Form Applet*.
- 5** Repeat [Step 1](#) to [Step 3](#) for *Recent Record Order Entry - Orders List Applet*.

**To configure the home page when you change the display value of an order type**

- 1** In the Order Types view of the Administration - Data screen, update the order type to point to the new LOV display value.



# 4

## Preparing for Integration

This chapter describes the setup required to integrate Siebel's order management applications with back-office systems. This setup is required in order to send and receive information when end users submit quotes and orders, check the status of an order, request information about availability to promise order items, and check the credit status for a customer. All of these functions make use of Application Services Interfaces (ASIs).

This chapter covers the following topics:

- "Integration Strategy for Order Management" on page 43
- "ASIs for Order Management" on page 44
- "Setting Up Quote and Order ASIs" on page 46
- "Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications" on page 49
- "Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications" on page 57
- "ASI Workflows for Quotes and Orders" on page 63

For information about integrating with and using a third-party taxation application, see *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*.

For more information about Application Services Interfaces, see *Application Services Interface Reference*.

### Integration Strategy for Order Management

If you integrate Siebel applications with back-office, accounting, and other systems, you will need to develop an integration strategy. The integration tasks you should consider depend on the business needs of your company. Some tasks you may want to consider are listed below.

- **Determine the system of record for each of the key data elements.** Some of the data elements you should consider are:
  - Item masters (product)
  - Configuration and pricing rules
  - Customer master

- **Decide how to replicate data.** You can either replicate data between your Siebel application and your back office application using batch replication at regular intervals (typically daily) or using real-time replication. If you use real-time replication, you must define a triggering event that causes data to be replicated on both systems. For example, you might define the triggering event to be a transaction such as entering a new customer or a new product. Then the replication would occur when the transaction is submitted. Alternatively, you might add a button to an applet that runs a workflow that triggers replication. Because Siebel applications save data when the user steps off the record, the event you define is not necessarily tied to when data is written to the database.
- **Define the points in your business process when you want to update information across systems.** You identify points in the business process when you should use ASIs to update information between your Siebel application and your back-office or a third-party system. For example, when the status of an order is updated in a back-office system, you might want the order status in your Siebel application to be updated automatically. If an end user of the Siebel application performs a query while accessing a new order, you could have the back-office system update the Siebel order in real-time. If your back-office system has the capability to do this, you can implement it using the Update Siebel Order ASI. However, if it is not feasible for your back-office system to provide this update in real-time, the end user can click a Get Status button on the user interface to request the updated order information.

## ASIs for Order Management

Siebel's Application Services Interfaces (ASIs) are predefined interfaces that allow the exchange of information between Siebel applications and external applications.

Several features of Siebel Order Management use ASIs.

- **Availability to Promise.** Availability to promise (ATP) allows end users to inquire about whether an item is available. End users can specify a requested date, a specific source such as an inventory location, and preferred shipment methods that could impact the delivery time. End users can also reserve available products for a customer to make sure they will be available when the order is processed, and they can unreserve products if customers change their minds. When the user clicks the Inquire, Reserve, or Unreserve button in a quote or order, the business service sends a request to a back office fulfillment engine to determine whether the specified line items are available. For details about how to set up the Availability to Promise ASI, see ["Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications" on page 49](#). For details about the user's experience of using the ATP functionality, see ["Checking Availability to Promise \(ATP\)" on page 91](#).
- **Credit Check.** When a customer uses the purchase order payment option for a quote or an order, the end user can perform a credit check to make sure that the customer can make the purchase on credit. In an order, the user clicks the Credit Check button in the Payment view tab to perform the credit check. In a quote, credit check is performed as part of the verification process when the user chooses the Verify menu option. Both actions launch a workflow that first determines if credit check is applicable for the selected quote or order and then, if needed, sends a request to an external system to get the credit decision for that transaction. Typically, the external system that performs the credit check is the back-office order or credit management system. For details about how to set up the Credit Check ASI, see ["Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications" on page 57](#). For details about the users' experience of using the credit check functionality, see ["Checking Credit for a Purchase Order" on page 103](#).

- **Submit Order.** When users have finished defining an order for a customer and the customer has agreed to the price and provided payment information, the order is submitted to the back office. When the user clicks the Submit button, the Submit Order ASI workflow sends information about the order to the back office system. For details about setting up the ASIs used by this workflow, see ["Setting Up Quote and Order ASIs" on page 46](#). For details about the user's experience of using the submit order functionality, see ["Submitting an Order" on page 114](#).
- **Submit Quote.** After a quote has been verified, the user can submit the quote to the back-office or any external system. When the user chooses the Submit menu option for a quote record from the menu on the Quote list, the Submit Quote ASI workflow sends the quote information to the external system and updates Siebel with the response from the external system. The external system might use the quote information for converting a quote to an order or for production planning. Additional configuration required for this can be made in the Siebel application as required to meet your company's business needs. For details about setting up the ASIs used by this workflow, see ["Setting Up Quote and Order ASIs" on page 46](#).
- **Query Order Status.** Typically, a company will receive information about the status of orders at regular intervals from the fulfillment system. However, when a sales person talks with a customer about the status of an order, they want to make sure that they present the most current information. In order to do so, they can click the Get Status button on an order. This calls the Get Order Status ASI workflow, which retrieves information from the back-office system. For details about setting up the ASIs used by this workflow, see ["Setting Up Quote and Order ASIs" on page 46](#). For details about the user's experience of using the submit order functionality, see ["Submitting an Order" on page 114](#).
- **Updating Order Status.** When the status of an order is updated in a back-office system, it can replicate that information in the Siebel application to keep the two systems synchronized. This is done by using the Siebel Order ASI with a method of Update or Sync, and can be set up as a Web service. For details about using the Siebel Order ASI, see ["Setting Up Quote and Order ASIs" on page 46](#).

Figure 3 shows the points in the order process where ASI integration occurs.

**Create, Submit, and Check Status Order Process with ASI Integration Points**

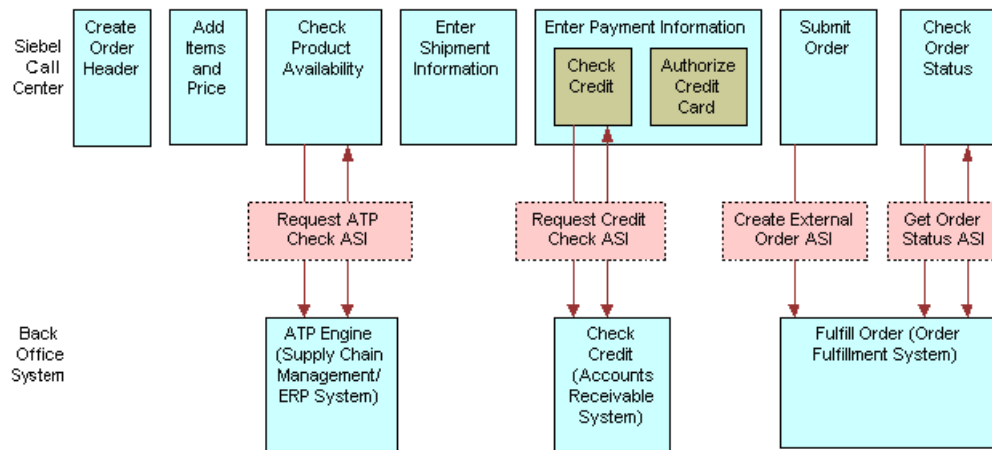


Figure 3. ASI Integration Points in the Ordering Process

You must set up the ASIs shipped with Siebel Order Management before they can be used. This chapter provides the procedures that you must perform to set up these ASIs. It also describes the ways that Siebel Order Management invokes ASIs, and documents the workflows that you may want to modify to change the ways that ASIs are invoked.

For general information about ASIs, see *Application Services Interface Reference: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume VI*.

## Setting Up Quote and Order ASIs

Two pairs of ASIs are used during these four order management processes:

- Submitting orders
- Importing quotes and orders
- Updating quote and order status
- Querying orders

These ASI pairs are:

- Siebel Quote (inbound) and External Quote (outbound)
- Siebel Order (inbound) and External Order (outbound)

To set up real-time submission of quotes and orders with your back-office system, you must:

- Set up the Web services for Quote and Order ASIs

■ Activate Workflows

**NOTE:** If you want to add to or change the fields that are sent to the back-office system, you can customize the integration objects for each ASI. For more information, see *Application Services Interface Reference: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume VI*.

## Setting Up Web Services for Quote and Order ASIs

To set up Web services, you must set up both outbound and inbound Web services for the Quote and Order ASIs. The procedures below show you the steps required for each of these.

### To set up the outbound Order Web service

- 1 Navigate to Administration - Web Services > Outbound Web Service.
- 2 In the Outbound Web Service list, create a query to display the record with *External Order* in the Name field.
- 3 Verify that the fields in the Outbound Web Services list match those in the following table.

Namespace	Name	Status
http://siebel.com/asi/	External Order	Active

- 4 In the Service Ports list, click New, and enter the following values in the fields of the new record.

Field	Comments
Name	Enter a name for the port.
Port Type	Enter External Order.
Transport	Select from the drop-down list.  If you want to set up testing, for example when you are customizing applets or extending the ASI, select Local Business Service.
Address	When you select a transport, the field will be populated with a template address. Edit the address based on where you are sending the data.
Binding	If a SOAP header is expected by the receiving application, select SOAP_RPC.

### To set up the outbound Quote Web service

- 1 In the Outbound Web Service list, create a query to display the record with *External Quote* in the Name field.

- 2 Verify that the fields in the Outbound Web Services list match those in the following table.

Namespace	Name	Status
http://siebel.com/asi/	External Quote	Active

- 3 In the Service Ports list, review the information in the fields for the External Quote service port and make any changes required for your system.

**To set up the inbound Order Web service**

- 1 Navigate to the Inbound Web Service list of the Administration - Web Services screen.
- 2 In the Inbound Web Service list, create a query to display the record *Siebel Order* in the Name field.
- 3 Verify that the fields in the Inbound Web Services list match those in the following table.

Namespace	Name	Status
http://siebel.com/asi/	Siebel Order	Active

- 4 In the Service Ports list, review the information in the fields for the Siebel Order service port and make any changes required for your system.
- 5 In the Operations list, review the information shown and make any changes required for your system.

**To set up the inbound Quote Web service**

- 1 Navigate to the Inbound Web Service view of the Administration - Web Services screen.
- 2 In the Inbound Web Service list, create a query to display the record *Siebel Quote* in the Name field.
- 3 Verify that the fields in the Inbound Web Services list match those in the following table.

Namespace	Name	Status
http://siebel.com/asi/	Siebel Quote	Active

- 4 In the Service Ports list, review the information in the fields for the Siebel Quote service port and make any changes required for your system.
- 5 In the Operations list, review the information shown and make any changes required for your system.



## Activating Workflows for Quotes and Orders

You must activate the following workflow processes used for real-time integration of quotes and orders:

- Get Order Status ASI
- Submit Order ASI
- Submit Quote ASI

If you want users to be able to create quotes and orders from the Accounts screen and the Contacts screen, you must also activate the following workflows:

- Account - New Order
- Account - New Quote
- Goto\_Order
- Goto\_Quote
- Contact - New Order
- Contact - New Quote

### ***To activate workflows used by Quote and Order ASIs***

- 1 Navigate to Administration - Business Process screen > Workflow Processes.
- 2 In the Workflow Processes list, use a query to find the appropriate workflows. To find all processes where Name field has contains the word ASI, you can query on \*ASI\*.
- 3 Activate workflows that have the status Inactive.
  - a Select the Workflow record.
  - b Click Revise.

A copy of the workflow record with a status of In Progress is created and is automatically selected.
  - c Click Activate.
- 4 When you are finished activating workflows, restart the server.

## Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications

This section tells you how to set up the interface between Siebel and an external Availability to Promise (ATP) engine in order to provide customers with information about availability of products they wish to order.

Product availability information is stored in third-party ATP systems. When a customer clicks an inquire or reserve button, product availability information is passed to the Siebel application by a third-party product availability fulfillment engine, also known as an availability-to-promise (ATP) engine. Siebel Order Management displays whatever data the ATP engine returns.

Integration with the product availability fulfillment engine uses the business service named External ATP Check. In addition it uses a specific, prebuilt Application Services Interface (ASI) named ATP Check. Some configuration is required to set up this integration.

To set up the use of third-party product availability-to-promise systems, you must perform the following tasks:

- 1 ["Checking the Availability Fulfillment Methods"](#)
- 2 ["Setting the ATP Action Parameter in Quote and Order Business Components Properties"](#)
- 3 ["Verifying the External ATP Check Business Service User Properties"](#)
- 4 ["Configuring Web Services"](#)

When setting up the use of third-party product availability-to-promise systems, you can perform the following optional tasks:

- 5 ["Preventing Rollup of Availability Information"](#)
- 6 ["Extending the ASI"](#)
- 7 ["Extending Returned Data"](#)
- 8 ["Customizing UI Terms"](#)

For more information about how to set up, use, and modify integrations based on ASIs, see *Application Services Interface Reference: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume VI*.

For information about the end user's experience in using the availability-to-promise features, see ["Checking Availability to Promise \(ATP\)" on page 91](#).

## Checking the Availability Fulfillment Methods

For the integration to work, you must check that your ATP engine supports the Inquire, Reserve, and Unreserve methods. If your ATP engine refers to these methods with different terms, you may need to do some configuration to map the method names.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications" on page 49](#).

## Setting the ATP Action Parameter in Quote and Order Business Components Properties

The product availability fulfillment integration is launched from a Quote or Order business component at either the header level or the line level. The Quote or Order business component defines the method to be used to invoke the ATP Check ASI. This method is one of those listed in [Table 5 on page 51](#), depending on whether the user clicked a button to Inquire, Reserve, or Unreserve.

You must make sure that the value of the ATP Action Parameter in the user property defining the ATPInquireAll method in both the Quote and Order business components matches the command expected by the ATP engine.

The ATP Action parameters come preconfigured with the values shown in Table 5. If these values match the commands expected by your ATP engine, you do not need to make any changes to the ATP Action parameter. However, if your ATP engine expects different commands, you can change them in Siebel Tools.

Table 5. Preconfigured ATP Action Parameter Settings

User Interface Element	BusComp	Method Name	ATP Action
Inquire All button, Quote or Order header	Quote/Order Entry - Orders	ATPInquireAll	Inquire
Inquire button, Quote or Order Line Items list	Quote Item/Order Entry - Line Items	ATPInquire	Inquire
Reserve All button, Quote or Order header	Quote/Order Entry - Orders	ATPReserveAll	Reserve
Reserve button, Quote or Order Line Items list	Quote Item/Order Entry - Line Items	ATPReserve	Reserve
Unreserve All button, Quote or Order header	Quote/Order Entry - Orders	ATPUnReserveAll	Unreserve
Unreserve button, Quote or Order Line Items list	Quote Item/Order Entry - Line Items	ATPUnReserve	Unreserve

The following procedure shows you how to make changes to the ATP Action parameter for the method ATPInquireAll. You can use these as a model to make changes to any of the other ATP methods, as appropriate.

**NOTE:** If the middleware handles this mapping, then you do not need to change this ATP Action Parameter. For example, if the middleware knows that ATP Action = Inquire in your Siebel application, and that ATP Action = Check in your fulfillment engine, the middleware provides the mapping.

This task is a step in “Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications” on page 49.

**To set the business component user properties for the Quote business component**

- 1 In Siebel Tools, select the Quote business component.
- 2 Select Business Component User Prop.
- 3 In the Value field, query for \*ATP\*.

This returns all of the Quote business component user properties that are related to the ATP functionality.

- 4 For the user property that includes the ATPInquireAll method, edit the ATP Action parameter so that it exactly matches the command expected by the ATP engine. The default value is Inquire.

**To set the business component user properties for the Order business component**

- 1 In Siebel Tools, select the Order business component.
- 2 Select Business Component User Prop.
- 3 In the Value field, query for \*ATP\*.

This returns all of the Order business component user properties that are related to the ATP functionality.

- 4 For the user property that includes the ATPInquireAll method, edit the ATP Action parameter so that it exactly matches the command expected by the ATP engine. The default value is Inquire.

## Verifying the External ATP Check Business Service User Properties

You must verify the External ATP Check business service user properties.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications"](#) on page 49.

**To verify the External ATP Check business service user properties**

- 1 In Siebel Tools, select the External ATP Check business service.
- 2 Select Business Service User Prop.
- 3 Verify that the Names and Values of the User Properties match those in the following table.

Name	Value
siebel_port_name	Default
siebel_web_service_name	External ATP Check
siebel_web_service_namespace	http://siebel.com/asi/

## Configuring Web Services

Web services are used to direct the inbound and outbound messages to and from:

- The third-party ATP engine
- A demonstration script that can be used to test your integration setup
- A middleware or integration server that will integrate with your fulfillment engine

You must make sure that the Web services are correctly configured.

This task is a step in “Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications” on page 49.

**To configure the Web services**

- 1 In your Siebel application, navigate to the Administration - Web Services screen.
- 2 From the Show drop-down list, select Outbound Web Services.
- 3 Select the row with External ATP Check in the Name field.
- 4 Verify that the fields in the Outbound Web Services list match those in the following table.

Namespace	Name	Status
http://siebel.com/asi/	External ATP Check	Active

- 5 In the Service Ports list, click New, and enter the following values in the fields of the new record.

Field	Comments
Name	Enter a name for the port.
Port Type	Enter External ATP Check.
Transport	Select from the drop-down list.  If you want to set up testing, for example when you are customizing applets or extending the ASI, select Local Business Service.
Address	When you select a transport, the field will be populated with a template address. Edit the address based on whether you are sending the data to middleware or the ATP engine.  If you want to set up testing, for example when you are customizing applets or extending the ASI, enter ATP ASI Test. For more information, see “Using the ATP ASI Testing Script” on page 54.
Binding	If a SOAP header is expected by the receiving application, select SOAP_RPC.  If you are using ATP ASI Test, select Property Set.

For more information about configuring Web Services and setting up demonstration scripts, see *Integration Platform Technologies: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume II*.

## Using the ATP ASI Testing Script

The ATP ASI test is a testing script that simulates a simple fulfillment engine. It writes the output and response to an XML file on the server machine. By default the script writes the output and the response to `${SIEBEL_HOME}/bin`, for example, `D:\Siebel\bin`. It writes an output file called `ATPOutput.xml`. This file represents what you would be sending to your middleware or fulfillment engine. Then the script generates a real-time response and sends the XML back to the Web service. The XML response that is generated is written into a file called `ATPFinished.xml`, which you can see in the file system. This testing infrastructure allows you to analyze what will be sent to the middleware and what the Siebel application is expecting back, and allows you to test your user interface.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications"](#) on page 49.

## Preventing Rollup of Availability Information

Product availability information is displayed for:

- The entire quote or order
- The quote or order line items
- The scheduled line items

The following information is preconfigured to roll up:

- Available status, date, and quantity are rolled up from the promised lines to the quote or order lines.
- Available status and date are rolled up from the quote or order lines to the quote or order header.

If your availability fulfillment engine only returns promised schedule lines and does not roll up this data to the line or the header, the out-of-the-box behavior will provide you with a rollup of the data.

If, however, your fulfillment engine already calculates this rollup, or if you do not want to roll up these fields, you may want to turn off this behavior.

Following are some examples of the preconfigured rollup of availability information:

- **Dates:** The latest date is rolled up at the parent level. For example, if line 1 has an available date of 7/15/02 and line 2 has an available date of 7/23/02, the available date for the order is set to 7/23/02.
- **Status:** If all lines have an ATP status of Available, the order also has a status of Available. However, if one of the lines has a different status, the order status is kept blank.
- **Quantity:** If Schedule line 1 has an availability quantity of 10, Schedule line 2 has an available quantity of 20, and both lines have the same ATP status of Available, then the quantity rolled up is the sum of both quantities (30).

**NOTE:** Rollup only occurs on quantity and date when the status of the promised line or the status of the line item is Available or Reserved.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications"](#) on page 49.

### **To turn off computation of the availability summary date**

- 1 In Siebel Tools, select the ATP business service.
- 2 Select Business Service User Prop.
- 3 Select the Rollup Availability user property, and change the value from Y to N.

## **Extending the ASI**

If you want to extend the ASI, you must add fields to:

- The External Integration object called ATP Check Interface
- These Internal Integration objects:
  - ATP Check Interface Request - Quotes
  - ATP Check Interface Request - Orders
  - ATP Check Interface Response - Quotes
  - ATP Check Interface Response - Orders

This will create the necessary mapping between the ATP interface structure and the Siebel Quote and Order business components.

**NOTE:** If you make changes to these objects, the names of the fields in the Internal and External integration objects must match.

If you add a field, make sure that the names of the fields in the Internal and External integration objects match. For example, if you want to add the field Account DUNS# that maps on quote to Account DUNS#-quote and on order to Account DUNS#-order, you would do so as follows:

- ATP Check Interface
  - Integration Component Field:
    - Name: Account DUNS#
    - External Name: <BLANK>
- ATP Check Interface Request - Quotes
  - Integration Component Field:
    - Name: Account DUNS#
    - External Name: <your mapping of Account DUNS # to the Quotes Buscomp>
- ATP Check Interface Request - Orders
  - Integration Component Field:
    - Name: Account DUNS#
    - External Name: <your mapping of Account DUNS # to the Orders Buscomp>

If this is a field that you do not want the fulfillment engine to be able to modify, such as Ship To Address Id, add the NoUpdate Field user property to the internal response integration objects, as follows:

■ ATP Check Interface Response - Quotes

Integration Component Field:

Name: Ship To Address Id

External Name: <your mapping of Ship To Address Id to the Quotes Buscomp>

Integration Component Field User Property:

Name: NoUpdate

Value: Y

■ ATP Check Interface Response - Orders

Integration Component Field:

Name: Ship To Address Id

External Name: <your mapping of Ship To Address Id to the Orders Buscomp>

Integration Component Field User Property:

Name: NoUpdate

Value: Y

For information about how to extend the integration object, see *Integration Platform Technologies: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume II*.

This task is a step in "[Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications](#)" on page 49.

## Extending Returned Data

For information about how to extend the data that is received from the third-party inventory management system, including data about products that are expected to be manufactured, see *Application Services Interface Reference: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume VI*.

This task is a step in "[Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications](#)" on page 49.

## Customizing UI Terms

You may want to change the following terms in the user interface to more precisely reflect the type of data expected by, and returned by, your particular product availability fulfillment engine.

**Requested Date.** This could be either the date on which the customer wants to receive the product or the date on which the customer wants the seller to ship the product

**Available Date.** This could be either the date that the customer will receive the product or the date that the product will be shipped.



These two fields are designed to work together, reflecting parallel information.

This task is a step in [“Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications”](#) on page 49.

## Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications

This section tells you how to set up the ability to check the credit standing of customers who want to pay with purchase orders.

Before an order for products or services can be completed through your Siebel application, your company may want to assess whether the customer is in good credit standing to make the purchase on credit. Different applications are used to perform credit checks depending on the method of payment.

- For business customers paying with purchase orders, credit checks on the customer account are performed by a back-office, third-party accounts receivable or credit management application. This chapter describes how to set up these applications.
- For customers paying with a credit card, credit checks are performed by a third-party payment application. This chapter does not include information about how to set up these applications. For more information about third-party payment applications, see *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*.

Third-party accounts receivable or credit management applications use logic to make a credit determination based on your company’s previous history with the customer account and other credit data.

Integration with third-party credit checking applications uses a specific, pre-built Application Services Interface (ASI) named External Credit Check. Some configuration is required to set up this integration, but once set up, this functionality should not require any maintenance.

Credit checks are performed as part of the order process at the payment line level, when the user clicks the Credit Check button in an order, and as part of the quote process at the header level, when the user chooses the Verify menu option in a quote.

Two workflows directly control the process of checking the credit status of business accounts. These are:

- Credit Check - Quotes
- Credit Check - Orders

For more information about the quote and order process, including the details of these workflows, see [“ASI Workflows for Quotes and Orders”](#) on page 63.

**NOTE:** Purchase order credit checks can also be made on a quote or order from a customer application, such as Siebel eSales. For information about how to set up a purchase order credit checking integration from a customer application, see *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*.

To set up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications, you must perform the following tasks:

- 1 [“Verifying the External Credit Check ASI User Properties”](#) on page 58

- 2 ["Configuring Web Services for Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications" on page 58](#)
- 3 ["Activating the Workflow Processes for Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications" on page 59](#)

To set up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications, you can perform the following optional tasks:

- 4 ["Modifying User Properties for Purchase Order Credit Checking Integration" on page 60](#)
- 5 ["Turning Off Credit Checking" on page 60](#)
- 6 ["Customizing When Credit Checks Are Performed" on page 60](#)
- 7 ["Changing the Credit Auto-Approval Limit For Accounts" on page 61](#)
- 8 ["Skipping Credit Checks For an Account" on page 61](#)
- 9 ["Restricting Which Employees Can Administer Credit Checking" on page 62](#)
- 10 ["Extending the ASI for Credit Check Interface Request" on page 62](#)

**NOTE:** If you modify any lists of values such as order types or purchase order payment methods, be sure to review the workflows processes in Credit Check - Quotes and Credit Check - Orders to verify that the application logic to determine whether to call credit check is still correct.

For more information about to how to set up, use, and modify integrations based on ASIs, see *Application Services Interface Reference: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume VI*.

## Verifying the External Credit Check ASI User Properties

You must verify the External Credit Check ASI user properties.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications" on page 57](#).

### **To verify the External Credit Check ASI user properties**

- 1 In Siebel Tools, select the External Credit Check business service.
- 2 Select Business Service User Prop.
- 3 Verify that the Names and Values of the User Properties match those in the following table.

Name	Value
siebel_port_name	Default
siebel_web_service_name	External Credit Check
siebel_web_service_namespace	http://siebel.com/asi/

## Configuring Web Services for Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications

Web services are used to direct the inbound and outbound messages to and from:

- The third-party credit checking application
- A demonstration script that can be used to test your integration setup
- A middleware or integration server that will integrate with your accounts receivable system

You must make sure that the Web services are correctly configured.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications"](#) on page 57.

**To configure the Web services**

- 1 Navigate to Administration - Web Services > Outbound Web Services.
- 2 Select the row with External Credit Check in the Name field.
- 3 Verify that the fields in the Outbound Web Services list match those in the following table.

Namespace	Name	Status
http://siebel.com/asi/	External Credit Check	Active

- 4 In the Service Ports list, click New, and enter the following values in the fields of the new record.

Field	Comments
Name	Enter a name for the port.
Port Type	Enter External Credit Check.
Transport	Select from the drop-down list.  If you want to set up testing, for example when you are customizing applets or extending the ASI, select Local Business Service.
Address	When you select a transport, the field will be populated with a template address. Edit the address based on whether you are sending the data to middleware, the Credit Check application, and so on.  If you want to set up testing, enter Credit Check ASI Test.
Binding	If a SOAP header is expected by the receiving application, select SOAP_RPC.  If you are using Credit Check ASI Test, select Property Set.

## Activating the Workflow Processes for Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications

You must activate the following workflow processes:

- Credit Check - Quotes
- Credit Check - Orders

For information about activating workflows, see [“Activating the Workflows” on page 39](#) and *Integration Platform Technologies: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume II*.

For more information about configuring Web Services and setting up demonstration scripts, see *Integration Platform Technologies: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume II*.

This task is a step in [“Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications” on page 57](#).

## Modifying User Properties for Purchase Order Credit Checking Integration

You can modify the user properties for the credit checking integration to, for example, change what code represents an error. To do this, modify the user properties of the Credit Check Service business service using Siebel Tools.

Business Service > Credit Check Service (eSales)

Business Service User Properties

ERROR\_CODE = <some other value>

Default error code is 3.

This task is a step in [“Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications” on page 57](#).

## Turning Off Credit Checking

In a quote, credit checking is part of the verify functionality. You can turn it off by changing the Credit Check user property in the Quotes business component. When the Credit Check user property is set to N instead of Y, the verify function will not perform the credit check.

You can also pick what workflow you want to call to execute the credit check by going to Business Component > Quote and changing the following Business Component User Properties:

- For the Credit Check user property, change the value from Y to N.
- For the Credit Check Workflow user property, change the value from Credit Check Quotes to the workflow you want to use.

In an order, the user performs the credit check by clicking the Credit Check button. To turn off credit check for orders, you can either modify the Credit Check - Order workflow or remove the button from the Payment Detail - Purchase Order applet.

This task is a step in [“Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications” on page 57](#).

## Customizing When Credit Checks Are Performed

A credit check does not need to be performed on every quote or order that will be paid for with a purchase order. You can customize when a credit check is performed by modifying the Credit Check - Quotes workflow process and the Credit Check - Orders workflow process.

In the default credit check business processes, credit check will only be performed if all the following conditions apply:

- Payment method is Purchase Order
- The bill-to account's Skip Credit Check flag is Off
- The purchase order amount is greater than the bill-to account's Credit Auto Approval Limit amount

In addition, credit check is not applicable for orders of type RMA and Internal Order, so it will be skipped.

**CAUTION:** If you decide to modify the Credit Check - Quotes workflow process, it is important to know that this workflow process is also used by Siebel eSales to create an order. For more information about the impact of this, see the section about this workflow process in *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*. If you want to have different workflows for Quotes and eSales, you will need to create an additional workflow.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications"](#) on page 57.

## Changing the Credit Auto-Approval Limit For Accounts

You can change the credit auto-approval limit for accounts in several different ways:

- **Using Siebel Tools.** When your company wants to change the limit for all new accounts, you can change it in Siebel Tools.  
**NOTE:** Making this change in Siebel Tools does not affect previously existing accounts.
- **Using a batch eScript.** If you need to change the value for a large number of account records, you can do so with a batch eScript.
- **Editing the Value for an Account.** To change the limit for a few accounts, you can manually editing the value of the Credit Auto Approval Limit for a specific account in the Account screen > Credit Profile view.

**NOTE:** Do not confuse the Credit Auto Approval Limit field with the PO Auto Approval Limit field.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications"](#) on page 57.

## Skipping Credit Checks For an Account

End users can skip automatic credit checking for particular accounts by changing the value of the Skip Credit Check field. This field is displayed in the Account screen > Credit Profile view. When this check box is checked, it indicates that credit checks should be skipped for the account.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications"](#) on page 57.

## Restricting Which Employees Can Administer Credit Checking

There are two ways to restrict which employees can administer credit checking on accounts:

- Create a read-only version and a read-write version of the Account Detail - Credit Profile view. Give employees who should administer credit checking access to the read-write view. Give employees who should not administer credit checking access to the read-only view.
- Add a rule or logic to restrict who can update fields related to credit checking. For example, only allow an account's primary sales representative to update these fields.

This task is a step in ["Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications"](#) on page 57.

## Extending the ASI for Credit Check Interface Request

If you want to extend the ASI, you must add fields to:

- The following external and internal interfaces:
  - Credit Check Interface Response
  - Credit Check Interface Request
- The following internal objects:
  - Credit Check Interface Request - Quote
  - Credit Check Interface Request - Order

This will create the necessary mapping between the Credit Check interface structure and the Siebel Quote and Order business components.

- If you add a field, make sure that the names of the fields in the Internal and External integration objects match. For example, if you want to add the field Priority that maps on quote to Priority-quote and on order to Priority-order, you would do so as follows: Credit Check Interface Request

Integration Component Field:

Name: Priority

External Name: <BLANK>

- Credit Check Interface Request - Quotes

Integration Component Field:

Name: Priority

External Name: <Mapping of Priority to the correct field on Quotes Buscomp>

- Credit Check Interface Request - Orders

Integration Component Field:

Name: Priority

External Name: <Mapping of Priority to the correct field on Quotes Buscomp>

For information about how to extend the integration object, see *Integration Platform Technologies: Siebel eBusiness Application Integration Volume II*.

This task is a step in “[Process of Setting Up Purchase Order Credit Checking Applications](#)” on page 57.

## ASI Workflows for Quotes and Orders

This section documents the workflow processes that are used to invoke the ASIs for quote and order processes. It is not necessary to modify these workflows, but you can modify them to suit your business model.

### Get Order Status ASI

This workflow queries the outside system to retrieve the latest information on the order. It returns the new information and synchronizes the order on the current system.

- **Query Order By Id:** Queries for the order on the current system using the object id. Returns an order property set containing all the order information.
- **Isolate Integration Id:** In the next step, the workflow will use a query by example. Query by example will take the property set and look for an order with the same exact values for the fields in the property set. If the order has changed on the outside system, those values will no longer match. The workflow needs to query by a value that will not change, the integration id. Isolate Integration Id takes in a property set and removes all the fields, except the integration id.
- **External Order Proxy:** Using the property set, which only has an integration id now, this step queries by example on the outside systems. Once it finds the order with that integration id, it returns an order property set containing all the order information.
- **Synchronize Order:** Takes the order property set returned by the previous step and synchronizes it with the order in the current system.

### Submit Order ASI

This workflow submits the order to the outside system to synchronize the information between the two systems.

- **Query Order By Id:** Queries for the order on the current system using the object id. Returns an order property set containing all the order information.
- **External Order Proxy:** Calls insert on the outside system, passing in the order property set. This step returns an order property set, which will contain any changes the outside system made to the order.
- **Synchronize Order:** Takes the order property set returned by the previous step and synchronizes it with the order in the current system.

### Submit Quote ASI

This workflow submits the quote to the outside system to synchronize the information between the two systems.

- **Query For Quote By Id:** Queries for the quote on the current system using the object id. Returns a quote property set containing all the quote information.
- **External Quote Proxy:** Calls insert on the outside system, passing in the quote property set. This step returns a quote property set, which will contain any changes the outside system made to the quote.
- **Synchronize Quote:** Takes the quote property set returned by the previous step and synchronizes it with the quote in the current system.



# 5

## Creating a Quote or Order

Quotes and orders are created using a similar process. The end user performs different procedures to start a quote or order. Then the end user performs the same procedures to add other information about either a quote or order.

This chapter describes the tasks for starting a quote and for starting an order. Then it describes the common tasks for creating both quotes and orders.

This chapter covers the following topics:

- ["Process of Creating a Quote" on page 65](#)
- ["Process of Creating an Order" on page 68](#)
- ["Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders" on page 71](#)

For more information about quotes, see [Chapter 6, "Working with Quotes."](#)

For more information about orders, see [Chapter 7, "Working with Orders."](#)

### Process of Creating a Quote

To create a quote, perform the following tasks:

- 1 Create the Quote record in one of two ways:
  - ["Starting a Quote."](#) You can create a new quote record manually from a number of screens.
  - ["Using Auto Quote from an Opportunity."](#) Alternatively, you can create the new quote record by using Auto Quote from an opportunity.
- 2 ["Performing Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders."](#) Because the remaining tasks for entering information about the quote are the same whether you are creating a quote or an order, they are covered in ["Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders" on page 71](#)
- 3 ["Verifying the Quote."](#) When you have finished creating a quote, you should verify it to see if you have made any errors.

### Starting a Quote

This section describes how to start a new quote from a number of screens:

- If you start the quote from the account, contact, or opportunity screen, your Siebel application automatically copies the account, contact, or opportunity information into the quote. If a price list is associated with the account or opportunity, it is also entered.
- If you start the quote using the Quotes screen, you must enter all this information manually.

For information about how to start a quote based on an existing asset, see [Chapter 9, "Using Asset-Based Ordering."](#)

This task is a step in ["Process of Creating a Quote"](#) on page 65.

**To start a quote**

- 1 Perform one of the following actions, depending on which screen you want to use to start the quote:
  - To start a quote from the Quotes screen, navigate to the Quotes screen.
  - To start a quote from an opportunity, navigate to the Opportunities screen, select the opportunity for which you want to generate a quote, and click the Quotes view tab.
  - To start a quote for a specific account, navigate to the Accounts screen, select the account for which you want to generate a quote, and click the Quotes view tab.
  - To start a quote for a specific contact, navigate to the Contacts screen, select the contact for which you want to generate a quote, and click the Quotes view tab.
- 2 In the Quotes list, add a new record. The following information is entered automatically in More Info form:

Field	Comments
Sales Rep	Your name is entered.
Quote #	A unique system-generated number assigned to the quote when it is created.
Revision	The number of revisions associated with the quote. When the quote is created, this value is 1.
Created	The date the quote was created. Your Siebel application automatically sets the value for an active quote to the Start Date + 30 days.
Active	A checkbox indicating whether the quote is active. When you create a quote, it is automatically marked as active.  <b>NOTE:</b> The quote must be designated as active in order to attach files to it or otherwise update it.
Status	The initial status of the quote is In Progress. The status can be changed later, as the quote process continues. For example, if you convert the quote to an order, the status changes to Order Placed. Other statuses for the quote are defined by your company. Some of the statuses companies often use include Approved, Rejected, Expired, Placed, and Active.
Effective As Of	Defaults to the created date. You can change this, if appropriate.
Effective Through	Defaults to the effective date plus 30 days. You can change this if the quote will be available for a different length of time.
Currency	Default currency for the quote.

- 3 Enter the following information in the new record and the More Info form:

Field	Comments
Name	Enter a name for the quote. If you do not enter a name, the quote number is assigned as the name.
Discount	(Optional.) Enter a default discount percentage to be applied to the line items you add to the quote. This discount will be used instead of any pricing rules associated with a price list. For more information, see <a href="#">"Applying a Manual Discount" on page 84</a> .
Price List	Enter a price list to be used for the quote, if one is not assigned automatically through association with the account. Available price lists are restricted by the currency associated with this quote.
Opportunity	(Optional.) Select an opportunity associated with the quote. The account associated with opportunity is automatically inserted.
Account	Select the account with which the quote should be associated, if one has not been entered automatically.
Last Name and First Name	Select the contact for this quote, if one has not been entered automatically.
Due	(Optional.) Enter a due date for the quote.
Comments	Enter any comments about the quote.

## Using Auto Quote from an Opportunity

If sales representatives are working with an opportunity where the products have already been specified, they can save time by using the Auto Quote button of the Opportunities screen to generate the quote.

Products are automatically copied from the opportunity to the quote if the Auto Quote check box for the product is selected. When end users create opportunities, they use the Product view of the Opportunity screen to specify products for the opportunity. When they add a product to this list, the Auto Quote check box is automatically selected, but they can exclude a product from a quote by clearing this check box.

This task is a step in ["Process of Creating a Quote" on page 65](#).

### To use Auto Quote

- 1 Navigate to the Quotes view of the Opportunities screen.  
The opportunity for which you want to generate a quote must be selected.
- 2 In the Quotes list, click Auto Quote.  
A new quote record appears. The products from the opportunity are copied into the quote.

- 3 Fill in the Name and Price List fields for the quote.
- 4 Optionally, drill down on the quote name to display the Quote Line Items view, where you can perform further work with the quote's products.

## Performing Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders

After starting the quote, you must enter all the information for it. Because the tasks for entering this information are the same whether you are creating a quote or an order, they are covered in ["Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders" on page 71](#).

This task is a step in ["Process of Creating a Quote" on page 65](#).

## Verifying the Quote

When you have finished creating a quote, you should verify it to see if you have made any errors.

You can also verify a quote while you are working with it. For example, you can verify the quote after changing it, to see if the change has introduced errors.

For information about how to verify a quote, see ["Verifying a Quote" on page 108](#).

This task is a step in ["Process of Creating a Quote" on page 65](#).

## Process of Creating an Order

This section describes how to create a new order that is not based on a quote.

If you have already created a quote, you should create the order by converting that quote to an order, rather than by using the procedures in this section. Then the order pulls in all the details from the quote, so you do not have to reenter these details. For more information, see ["Converting a Quote to an Order" on page 110](#).

An advantage of creating an order that is based on a quote is that you can verify a quote to see if it has any errors. If you are creating a complex order that might have errors, you should do it by creating quote, verifying the quote, and then converting it to an order. For more information, see ["Process of Creating a Quote" on page 65](#).

To create an order that is not based on a quote, you perform the following tasks:

- 1 ["Starting an Order"](#). You can create a new order record from a number of screens.
- 2 ["Performing Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders"](#). Because the remaining tasks for entering information about the order are the same whether you are creating a quote or an order, they are covered in ["Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders" on page 71](#).
- 3 ["Submitting an Order"](#). When the customer is ready to place the order, the end user submits the order. For more information, see ["Submitting an Order" on page 114](#).

## Starting an Order

This section describes how to start a new order from a number of screens:

- If you start the order from the Account, Service Request, Project, Contact, Campaign, or Contract screen, your Siebel application automatically copies information from that screen into the order.
- If you start the order using the Orders screen, you must enter all this information manually.

This task is a step in ["Process of Creating an Order" on page 68](#).

For information about how to start an order based on an existing asset, see [Chapter 9, "Using Asset-Based Ordering."](#)

### To start an order

- 1 Perform one of the following tasks, depending on which screen you want to start the order from:
  - To start an order from the Orders screen, navigate to the Orders screen, Sales Orders view.
  - To start an order for a particular account, navigate to the Accounts screen, select the account for which you want to generate an order, click the menu button, and then click New Order.
  - To start an order from a quote, service request, project, contact, campaign, or contract, navigate to the screen for the object, select the record with which the order will be associated, and click the Orders view tab.
- 2 In the Orders list, add a new record. The following information is added automatically.

Field	Comments
Order #	A unique system-generated number assigned to the order when the order is created.
Status	New orders are assigned the status Pending. The status can be changed later, as the order process continues. Some of the statuses companies often use for sales orders include Open, Awaiting Approval, Approved, Complete, Booked, In Transit, Shipped, and Cancelled.
Status as of Date	Initially, reflects the current date and time. When the status is changed, this field also updates to show the date and time when the status changed.
Priority	The priority of the order. New orders are assigned the priority Medium.
Order Date	The date the quote was created.
Version	The version associated with the order. When the order is created, this value is typically 1. The number is incremented every time the order is revised. For details see <a href="#">"Revising an Order" on page 117</a> .
State	The state of the order. For example: open, closed, pending. Note that this may not be the same as status.

- 3 In the Type field, select the type of order you are creating.

**NOTE:** If you created the order from a contact, it is automatically created as a service order.

- 4 If you are in the Orders list at the bottom of the Accounts screen, Quotes screen, Service Request screen, or another screen, drill down on the order number to display the Order screen.
- 5 Click the Header Detail view tab.
- 6 In the Header Detail form, review any information that has been copied into the order, and make any necessary changes to it.

Field	Comments
Contact Last Name	Enter the contact for this order, if it has not been entered automatically.
Sold To Account	Enter the account to which this order will be sold, if it has not been entered automatically.
Sold To Address	Because an account may have more than one address associated with it, use this field to select the correct address for this order.
Team	Team with which the employee creating the order is associated. This is used to determine sales compensation. For more information, see <i>Siebel Incentive Compensation Administration Guide</i> .
Parent Order	The number of a parent order, if one is associated with this order.
Currency	The currency for the order.
Price List	Defaults to the price list associated with an account, if a price list is associated with an account. Price lists that can be assigned to this order are restricted by the currency.
Default Discount %	Enter a discount to be applied to line items instead of using pricing rules.
Requested Date	Enter the date requested by customer. Depending on your organization's process, this may be either the date the customer would like the products to be shipped, or the date the customer wishes to receive the order.

**NOTE:** Some of the information entered in the Header Detail form will be used as the default settings when you add line items. For example, the Default Discount % becomes the discount set for each line item. Changing it in the Header Detail does not affect the discount of current line items, but sets the discount for the next line items that you add. For additional information, see ["Viewing and Recalculating Prices" on page 79](#).

- 7 Click the Line Item view tab.
- 8 In the Totals form, below the Line Item list, enter Shipping Method, Shipping Terms, and Carrier. When you enter this information in the Totals form before adding line items, it will be the default for each line item.

## Performing Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders

After starting the order, you must enter all the information for the information. Because the tasks for entering this information are the same whether you are creating a quote or an order, they are covered in ["Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders" on page 71](#).

This task is a step in ["Process of Creating an Order" on page 68](#).

## Submitting an Order

When the customer is ready to place the order, the end user submits the order. For more information, see ["Submitting an Order" on page 114](#).

This task is a step in ["Process of Creating an Order" on page 68](#).

## Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders

After you have created either a quote or an order record, you must perform the common tasks described in this section to provide the remaining information required by the quote or order.

First, you must perform one of these two tasks:

- ["Process of Creating a Quote" on page 65](#)
- ["Process of Creating an Order" on page 68](#)

Then, to complete the quote or order, you perform the following tasks:

- 1 ["Adding Products to a Quote or Order" on page 71](#)
- 2 ["Working With Line Items of Quotes and Orders" on page 77](#)
- 3 ["Viewing and Recalculating Prices" on page 79](#)
- 4 ["Applying a Manual Discount" on page 84](#)
- 5 ["Adding Shipping Information" on page 88](#)
- 6 ["Calculating Shipping Charges" on page 89](#)
- 7 ["Calculating Taxes" on page 90](#)
- 8 ["Checking Availability to Promise \(ATP\)" on page 91](#)
- 9 ["Working with Payment Information for Quotes or Orders" on page 93](#)

## Adding Products to a Quote or Order

Users add products to a quote or order as line items. They can do this in the following ways:

- "Adding Multiple Items at One Time" on page 72
- "Adding Items One at a Time" on page 72
- "Browsing the Catalog to Add Line Items" on page 73
- "Using Siebel Advisor to Add Line Items" on page 73
- "Using a Template to Add Line Items" on page 73
- "Adding a Write-In Product" on page 74
- "Adding a Package of Line Items" on page 75
- "Adding a Service Product to a Quote or Order" on page 76

This task is part of the "Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders" on page 71

## Adding Multiple Items at One Time

The Add Items feature allows an end user to add multiple items at one time and to specify the quantity and attributes for those items at the same time.

**NOTE:** Your company can set a flag in Siebel Tools to show only the products in the selected price list. For more information, see *Using Siebel Tools*.

### ***To add a product to a quote or order using Add Items***

- 1** Navigate to the quote or order to which you want to add items.
- 2** In the Line Items list, click Add Items.
- 3** In the Pick Products dialog box, select the products to add to the quote.
  - a** Enter the quantity in the Order Qty field for the products you want to add and click Add.
  - b** To specify attributes for a product, click the Attributes button on the product row, complete the dialog, and click OK.
  - c** When you are finished specifying product quantity and attributes, click OK.

The products appear in the Line Items list.

## Adding Items One at a Time

The New Record menu option allows the user to enter one record at a time. This method is useful when the end user already knows the product name.

### ***To add items one at a time***

- 1** Navigate to the quote or order to which you want to add items.
- 2** In the Line Items list, click the menu button and then click New Record.
- 3** In the Line Items list, enter the product name in the Product field or click the select button in the Product field and select a product from the Pick Product dialog box.



- 4 Make any necessary changes to the quantity or attributes.

## Browsing the Catalog to Add Line Items

While end users are creating quotes or orders, they can select products by browsing the product catalog. Some products may also have deals associated with them, which the end user can select to obtain special pricing for a customer.

**NOTE:** The Browse Catalog feature is only available if your company has purchased Siebel eCatalog. For more information, see *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*.

### **To browse the catalog to add line items**

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order to which you want to add items.
- 2 In the Quote or Order header summary, click Browse Catalog.
- 3 In the Browse list, select each product to add by entering the quantity, and then click Add Item.
- 4 After you add the desired products, click View Details to return to the quote or order.

For more details about working with the Catalog, see *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*.

## Using Siebel Advisor to Add Line Items

Siebel Advisor is a needs analysis tool that helps customers find products that meet their needs. When a sales representative user starts Advisor, it presents a list of questions to help identify the appropriate solution for the customer. Based on the answers entered, Advisor displays a recommended product that can be added to a quote or order.

If a product has attributes, then the end user can make changes to the product.

For more information about Siebel Advisor, see *Siebel Interactive Designer Administration Guide*.

### **To use Advisor to add line items**

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order to which you want to add items.
- 2 In the Order header summary, click Get Advice, or in the Quote header summary, click the menu button and then click Get Advice to launch an Advisor session.
- 3 Step through the needs analysis questions.
- 4 Make any additional changes you want to the line items via Siebel Configurator.
- 5 Click Add Items to add the product as a line item.

## Using a Template to Add Line Items

Product selection templates are groups of products and attributes that have been saved for reuse. Some product selection templates are public, and are available to anyone using the Siebel application. Other product selection templates are private, and are available only to a specific user. Private templates are templates that an end user creates from an existing quote or order.

***To add all the items in a template to the current quote or order***

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order to which you want to add items.
- 2 In the Quote or Order header summary, click Select Templates.
- 3 In the Product Selection Templates dialog box, select the template you want to use and click OK.  
The items and associated attributes are copied into the quote or order as line items. The end user can make any additional changes to the line items, such as selecting attributes or configuring a customizable product.

***To add only some of the items in a template to the current quote or order***

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order to which you want to add items.
- 2 In the Quote or Order header summary, click Select Templates.
- 3 In the Product Selection Template dialog box, drill down on the name of the template from which you want to select items.  
The Product Template List appears, and the Product Template Item List shows all the products in this template.
- 4 Select the products you want to add to the current quote or order and click Add Selected Items.  
The quote or order screen appears, and the items you selected appear in the Line Items list.

***To create a private product template***

- 1 Make sure the current quote or order contains the line items you want to save in the template.
- 2 In the Quote or Order header summary form, click the menu button and then click Save As Template.
- 3 In the Save As Template dialog box, enter a name for the template and click Save.  
The items in the quote or order are saved as a private template.

***To make changes to a private product template***

- 1 Navigate to a quote or order.
- 2 In the Quote or Order header summary, click Select Template.
- 3 Drill down on the name of the template to which you want to make changes.  
The Product Template List appears, and the Product Template Item List shows all the products in this template.
- 4 Add items, delete items, or customize the items shown, to make the desired changes.

**Adding a Write-In Product**

An end user can create a write-in product for items that are not included in the price list.

### **To add a write-in product**

- 1** Navigate to the quote or order to which you want to add the product.
- 2** In the Line Items list, click the menu button and then click New Record.
  - a** In the Product field, click the Select button.
  - b** In the Pick Product dialog box, in the Product field, type *\*write\** and then click Go.
  - c** In the Pick Product dialog box, select Write-In Product and then click OK.  
The Part # and Qty fields are automatically populated.
- 3** Enter the price.  
You can enter the price in the Discount Price or Discount Amount field.
- 4** (Optional) In the Comment field, enter the product's name or description.
- 5** (Optional) As appropriate, modify the quantity.

### **Adding a Package of Line Items**

The end user can use the Line Items list to create a group of products identified as a *package*. The *package price* is the rolled-up price of all the products in the group. If the end user discounts the price or changes the quantity of a product in the group, the price difference is automatically reflected in the net price and the extended price for the package. This is useful when the end user wants to give a price break to a customer based on the purchase of two or more items.

The end user first adds a line item that becomes the package container and then adds the components to the package.

### **To add the package container line item**

- 1** Navigate to the quote or order to which you want to add the product.
- 2** In the Line Items list, click the menu button and then click New Record.
  - a** In the Product field, click the Select button.
  - b** In the Pick Product dialog box, query for the product name Package, select it, and click OK.  
In the Line Item list, Package appears in the Product field.

### **To add a product to a package**

Once you have added the line item Package to a quote or order, you can add individual product items to the package.

- 1** Select the package line item, click the menu button and then click New Record.  
A new line item row appears.

- 2 In the Product field, click the select button and in the Pick Products dialog box, select the first product you want to add to the package you just created.

**NOTE:** Only simple products can be added to the package as components. You cannot add customizable products or bundle products to a package.

- 3 (Optional.) Modify the quantity and discounts for the product you just added. For information, see ["Viewing and Recalculating Prices" on page 79](#).

- 4 Select the new product line item.

- 5 Indent the item:

- If you are working in a quote, click the Indent button in the Line Item list.
- If you are working in an order, click the menu button, and then click Indent.

The icon and number in the Sequence column change to reflect the addition of a product line item to the package.

To add more products to the package, repeat [Step 1](#) through [Step 4](#) for each item.

**NOTE:** In order to be added to a package, line items must be directly under the package item, so that you can indent them. If necessary, you can use the renumber feature to move items in the list, so that they appear below the Package item. For details, see ["Renumbering Line Items" on page 77](#).

### Adding a Service Product to a Quote or Order

Service products are generally associated with a physical product. For example, a warranty extension for a new computer would be set up as a service product.

When an end user adds a service product to a quote or order, the price of the service product is based on its list price plus a percentage based on a service method. The price, percentage, and service method are all specified in the price list for the service product. The service method specifies how the service price is calculated.

For example, if the list price of a service product is \$100, the service method is Net Price (of the covered product) and the percentage is 10, then the price of the service will be \$100 (its own list price) plus 10 percent of the net price of the product with which it is associated.

The methods for adding service products to a quote and to an order are different.

#### ***To add a service product to a quote***

- 1 Navigate to the quote to which you want to add a service product.
- 2 Click the Line Items view tab.
- 3 In the Line Items list, select the line item for the covered product for which you want to add a service product and click Service.
- 4 In the Pick Sales Service Product dialog box, select the appropriate service product and click OK.

The product is added to the Line Items list and the total price appears in the Totals form.

### **To add a service product to an order**

- 1** Navigate to the order to which you want to add a service product.
- 2** Click the Line Items view tab.
- 3** In the Line Items list, add the product with which the service product will be associated.
- 4** In the Line Items list, add a record for the service product.
  - a** Click the menu button and click New Record.
  - b** In the Product field, enter the name of the of service product.  
The base price of the service product appears.
  - c** In the Covered Product field for the service product, click the select button.  
**NOTE:** The Covered Product field can only be edited when the line item is a service product. For other products, this field is read-only.
  - d** In the dialog box, select the physical product with which this service product is associated and click Add.  
The price now reflects the service method and percentage, as well as the base price.

## **Working With Line Items of Quotes and Orders**

After adding products to a quote or order as line items, users may need to work with the line items in the following ways:

- ["Renumbering Line Items" on page 77](#)
- ["Deleting a Line Item" on page 78](#)
- ["Customizing a Product" on page 78](#)
- ["Changing Component Quantities" on page 79](#)

This task is part of the ["Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders" on page 71](#)

### **Renumbering Line Items**

After end users have added all the line items for a quote, they can change the numbered sequence of the items. Items appear in this sequence in orders and reports, and a user may want to renumber them in a sequence that makes sense to a customer. For example, a customer might want a computer to appear at the top of the order, and the paper and toner to appear at the bottom.

#### **To renumber line items**

- 1** Navigate to the quote or order with which you want to work.
- 2** Click the Line Items view tab.
- 3** In the Line Items list, navigate through the columns until you see the Line column.
- 4** Select the Line field for items and renumber them as necessary.

- 5 Click the resort icon at the top of the Line column.
- 6 In the Line Item list, click the menu button and then click Reorder.  
The line items appear in the updated sequence.

## Deleting a Line Item

Sometimes an end user may need to delete a line item to remove a product from a quote or an order.

**NOTE:** To delete a component of a customizable product, the end user must do so in the configuration session. The end user cannot delete a component by deleting a record in the line items list, as described in the following procedure.

### *To delete line items*

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order.
- 2 In the Line Items list, select the item.
- 3 Click the menu button, and then click Delete Record.

## Customizing a Product

Some products that end users add to a quote or order can be customized. For instance, if a customer is interested in the computer products a company offers, the customer can select a computer system, but may also need to specify the type of monitor, hard drive, operating system, and so on. To create the quote or order, the end user first adds the computer system as a product line item, and then customizes it using Siebel Configurator.

The end user can tell when a product can be configured because the Customize button is enabled when the product record is selected. When a customizable product has components, the end user can expand the item to see the components included in the customizable product.

For more information about customizable products, see *Product Administration Guide*.

**NOTE:** The customize feature is only available if you have licensed Siebel Configurator.

### *To customize a product*

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order that contains the product that you want to configure.
- 2 In the Line Items list, select the line item that contains the customizable product, or add a new record for a product that is configurable.
- 3 With the customizable product selected, click Customize to start a configuration session.
- 4 In the selection pages, check to see that the item is configured correctly and make any necessary or desired changes.

For information about how to customize the product in the configuration session, see *Product Administration Guide*.

- 5 If you working in a quote, click the menu button in the quote header and then click Verify.

**NOTE:** When you choose the Verify menu option in a quote, the quote is verified as complete or incomplete. Part of the verification process checks to see whether the customizable product is incomplete. If you removed an item from the customizable product that is part of the minimum configuration, you must click Configure again to launch another configuration session and add it back in.

## Changing Component Quantities

A customer may want to order a different number of components than is set as the default in a customizable product.

Typically, end users change the quantity of a component in the configuration session that starts when they click the Customize button in the Line Items list. When an end user clicks Customize, Siebel Configurator checks all configuration rules to make sure that the change in quantity is appropriate.

Your company can decide to allow changes to component quantities directly in the Line Items list in the quote or order. For this to occur, a user property must be set in Siebel Tools. For more information, see ["Configuration with Siebel Tools" on page 36](#).

When this user property has been set, the Qty field in line item for components of customizable products is editable. If the Qty field is read-only, then this user property has not been set.

## Viewing and Recalculating Prices

The user may want to view the prices at many times while developing a quote and order.

Prices are recalculated automatically when the user performs certain actions. The user can also recalculate prices manually at any time, to see the latest price.

This task is part of the ["Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders" on page 71](#)

This section describes how the user can view and recalculate prices. It includes the following topics:

- ["Factors That Impact Prices" on page 79](#)
- ["Price and Discount Fields in Quotes and Orders" on page 80](#)
- ["Viewing Deal Information" on page 83](#)
- ["When Prices Are Recalculated" on page 83](#)
- ["When To Manually Recalculate Prices" on page 84](#)

## Factors That Impact Prices

The prices for quotes and orders are based on:

- **Price list.** Determines the list price for each product and the promotional prices for products that have them. For information about setting up price lists, see *Pricing Administration Guide*.

- **System-based pricing.** Price adjustments that are applied automatically, such as volume discounts, deals, and pricing factors associated with the account contacts. For information about setting up these price adjustments, see *Pricing Administration Guide*
  - NOTE:** Advanced pricing rules, such as pricing factors, are available if you have Siebel Pricer.
- **Manual discounts.** The sales representative can apply additional discounts manually. For information about manual discounts, see ["Applying a Manual Discount" on page 84](#).
- **Shipping charges.** determined by the shipping carrier and method indicated on the Fulfillment view tab for the quote or order. For information about shipping charges, see ["Calculating Shipping Charges" on page 89](#).
- **Taxes.** calculated on the final net price of the quote or order. For information about taxes, see ["Calculating Taxes" on page 90](#).

### Price and Discount Fields in Quotes and Orders

Price and discount fields are shown for:

- Overall quote or order.
- Individual line items.

#### Prices for the Overall Quote or Order

The Quote and Order header summaries show the total price for the quote or order, after all discounts.

The Quote header summary also shows the price list for the quote, and a default discount percentage to be applied to line items that the end user adds. For orders, these fields are on the Header Details view tab.

The Totals form at the bottom of the Quote Line Items view and the Order Line Items view show additional detail about the pricing and discounts for the overall quote or order.



Table 6 contains a description of the price and discount fields for the entire order.

Table 6. Price and Discount Fields for the Entire Order

Field	Comment
Discount (Percentage) or Default Discount	Shows a discount to be applied to items instead of any pricing rules. The discount entered here will be applied to items that are added to the quote or order after the discount is entered and to those that have already been added but do not have a pricing rule or line item discount associated with them. This value is entered as a percentage in the Quote header summary or the Order Header Details view tab. Although this discount is used instead of adjustments from price lists or pricing rules, it is used in combination with attribute-based pricing. This is called a manual discount.  Entering a discount here selects the Keep Discount field for all items in the quote or order.
Products Net	Shows the net price of all product line items.  Note: If a product does not have a product type set in Product Administration, the net price will not be included in the Products Net total, but it will still be included in the price shown in the Total field.
Services Net	Shows the net price of all service line items.  In order for products to be identified as service products and included in this total, the product type must be set in Product Administration.
Training Net	Shows the net price of all training line items.  In order for products to be identified as training products and included in this total, the product type must be set in Product Administration.
Total Item Start Price	The total start item price of all the line items, calculated by multiplying the quantity by the start price of each line item. (Start price is the list price or promotional price plus any attribute-based pricing adjustments.)
Total Item Discount	The total discount for all line items, based on discounts from price lists, pricing rules, volume discount, and additional discounts entered in the quote or order.
Total Item Net	The net price of all the items, after discounts.
Adjustment	Any adjustment to the price for the quote or order. This amount is entered as a dollar figure and applied to the entire quote or order. (To apply an adjustment and spread it across line items in the quote or order, use the Spread Discount button instead of the Adjustment field.)
Shipping Charges	Charges for shipping, based on carrier and method, indicated in the Fulfillment view tab or the Totals form and calculated with the Calculate Shipping button on the Totals form.

Table 6. Price and Discount Fields for the Entire Order

Field	Comment
Tax	Taxes on the items in the quote or order. Taxes are calculated with the Calculate Taxes button on the Totals form.
Total	<p>Final total to be charged to the customer for the items in the quote or order. This amount appears in both the Totals form and in the header summary.</p> <p>Note: The amount shown in the Total field may not equal the amounts displayed in the Products Net, Services Net, and Training Net fields. If some products do not have product types associated with them in Product Administration, or if your company has created additional product types, the amounts shown in the Products Net, Services Net, and Training Net fields may not represent the prices for all of the line items in the quote or order.</p>

**Price and Discount Fields for Individual Line Items**

The Line Items list and Line Item Detail form show the prices and discounts for individual line items.

Table 7 contains a description of the price and discount fields for individual line items for both quotes and orders.

Table 7. Price and Discount Fields for Individual Line Items

Field	Comment
Start Price	The price associated with the product in the price list, plus any attribute-based pricing adjustments. (Read-only)
Item Net Price	The price of the line item after discounts from pricing rules, volume discounts, or manual discounts. (Read-only)
Unit Net Price	The price of the line item (after discounts) plus the rollup of the item’s components (after discounts). (Read-only)
Manual Discount	<p>A discount for the line item can be entered in one of these three fields:</p> <p><b>Discount Amount.</b> The amount to be discounted per unit, as a dollar figure. Applied to the Start Price.</p> <p><b>Discount %.</b> The discount amount relative to the unit price, shown as a percentage. Applied to the Start Price.</p> <p><b>Discount Price.</b> The total amount to be charged for the item, per unit.</p> <p>A value can only exist in one of these discount fields. When you enter an amount in one of these discount field, it replaces any entries in the other two discount fields.</p> <p>This discount is applied to the line item, overriding any adjustments from price lists or pricing rules, and replacing any default discount from the quote or order header.</p>

Table 7. Price and Discount Fields for Individual Line Items

Field	Comment
Extended Price	Extended quantity times the start price, minus any discounts. This field appears in orders, but not in quotes. (Read-only)
Extended Net Price	Extended quantity times the unit net price. (Read-only)
Net Discount %	This field represents the net discount applied on the line as a percentage of the start price. (Read-only)
Non-Discounted Extended Price	The extended start price.
Current Discount	Description of the discount provided for the current quantity of this line item. For example: Buy 5-10, get 10% discount. (Read-only)
Next Discount	Description of the discount provided for the next level quantity of this line item. For example: Buy 11 to 20, get 20% discount. (Read-only)
Upsell	Message indicating the distance in units between the current quantity being ordered and the next minimum level break. For example: Buy 6 more and get a 20% discount.
Pricing Comment	If a pricing rule has been applied to this line item, any comments entered to explain that rule appear here. If more than one rule has been applied, you may see several comments. (Read-only)

## Viewing Deal Information

When an end user access the Catalog to add products to a quote or order, the user may find deals available for specific products. An end user can make a deal available to a customer by selecting it in the catalog. The deal is then added to the line item in the quote or order, and listed on the Deals view tab.

For information about how deals are set up and implemented, see *Siebel Marketing Guide* and *Pricing Administration Guide*.

### To view deals associated with a quote or order

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order.
- 2 Select the line item for which you want to review deals.
- 3 Click the Deals view tab.

The deals associated with the line item appear.

## When Prices Are Recalculated

Prices in a quote or order are automatically recalculated:

- Each time the end user adds an item to a quote or order

- When the end user changes the quantity for a line item
- When the end user changes the price list in the header
- When the end user verifies a quote
- When the end user adds a service product associated with a covered product

**NOTE:** Line items are excluded from repricing when the Keep Discount field is selected. This field is selected when the end user applies a manual discount to the line item. For more information, see [“Applying a Manual Discount” on page 84](#).

If a user wants a line item to be included in a repricing calculation, the user must be sure that the Keep Discount field is not checked.

### When To Manually Recalculate Prices

At times when prices are not automatically recalculated, end users can manually reprice an individual line item or all line items.

End users should reprice individual line items when they have changed a parameter at the line level (other than product or quantity) that could affect price.

End users should reprice all line items when:

- They want to have a bundle or aggregate-type pricing rule triggered.
- They have changed a field on the quote or order that may affect the price. For example, changing the account might result in using different pricing factors that are associated with account.

#### ***To reprice an individual line item***

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order.
- 2 In the Line Items list, select the line item.
- 3 In the Line Items list, click Menu, and then click Reprice.

#### ***To reprice all line items***

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order.
- 2 For an order, in the Line Items list, click Reprice All.
- 3 For a quote, in the Line Items list, click Menu and then click Reprice All.

## Applying a Manual Discount

End users can enter manual discounts for individual line items or for the entire quote or order.

When a manual discount is entered, it overrides:

- Promotions

- Pricing factors
- Volume discounts

Manual discounts do not override attribute-based pricing.

The end user can apply manual discount in the following ways:

- ["Applying a Default Discount to All Line Items" on page 85](#). Applies a default percentage discount to each line item as it is added to the quote or order
- ["Applying a Manual Discount to an Individual Line Item" on page 86](#). Applies the discount to an individual line item.
- ["Applying a Manual Discount to an Entire Quote or Order" on page 86](#). Applies a discount to the quote or order total but does not apply any discount to line items.
- ["Spreading a Manual Discount Across Line Items" on page 87](#). Applies a discount to the quote or order total and also applies this discount to the line items.

This task is part of the ["Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders" on page 71](#)

## Applying a Default Discount to All Line Items

To apply a default percentage discount to all line items as they are added, there are different procedures for quotes and orders.

### ***To apply a default discount to line items as you add them to a quote***

- 1** Navigate to the Quotes screen, locate the quote with which you want to work, and drill down on the Name hyperlink for the quote.
- 2** In the Quote header summary, in the Discount field, select the discount (a percentage value) that you want to apply to the line items in the quote.  
  
The percentage discount becomes the default for all new items that you add, and the Keep Discount check box will be selected for each line item.
- 3** Add the products that will receive this discount. For information about adding products, see ["Adding Multiple Items at One Time" on page 72](#).

**NOTE:** If you change the default discount at the header level for either a quote or an order, the revised discount will be applied to any line items with which the default discount is associated. It will not be applied to any line items with which a pricing rule was associated before the default discount was initially set, and it will not be applied to any line items for which discounts were set at the line level.

### ***To apply a header-level discount percentage to line items as you add them to an order***

- 1** Navigate to the Header Details view of the Orders screen, with the order with which you want to work selected.

- 2 In the Header Details form, in the Default Discount % field, select the discount that you want to apply to the new line items in the order.

The percentage discount becomes the default discount for all items that you add, and the Keep Discount check box is selected for each line item.

- 3 Add the products that will receive this discount. For information about adding products, see ["Adding Multiple Items at One Time" on page 72](#).

## Applying a Manual Discount to an Individual Line Item

End users can also apply manual discounts to individual line items.

If an end user applies a manual discount percentage for a line item, the result overrides any default discount entered at the quote or order header level.

### *To apply a manual discount to an individual line item*

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order with which you want to work.
- 2 In the Line Items list, select the line item to which you want to apply a discount.  
**NOTE:** You can also apply a manual discount to an individual component of a configurable product.
- 3 Click the Line Item Detail view tab, below the Line Items list.
- 4 In the Line Item Detail form, complete either the Discount %, Discount Amount, or Discount Price field. For more information about these fields, see ["Price and Discount Fields for Individual Line Items" on page 82](#)
- 5 Make sure that the Keep Discount checkbox is selected. (If you do not see this field, click the show more button.)

## Applying a Manual Discount to an Entire Quote or Order

End users can also apply manual discounts to an entire quote or order.

**NOTE:** This discount is not applied to individual line items. If you want to create a discount that is associated with line items, see ["Spreading a Manual Discount Across Line Items" on page 87](#).

### *To apply an adjustment to a quote or an order*

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order with which you want to work.
- 2 In a quote or order view, click the Totals view tab, below the Line Items list.
- 3 In the Totals form, enter the amount of the adjustment in the Adjustment field.  
The amount you enter is subtracted from the total price for the quote or order.

## Spreading a Manual Discount Across Line Items

An end user can enter a discount for an entire quote and spread it across all line items, across selected line items, or across line items of a particular type (products, services, or training). This can be done for a quote, but it cannot be done for an order without configuration.

Knowing the discount per line item is important to assist in managing returns and for accurate accounting and reporting. The spread discount feature reduces the effort of entering line item discounts. When a salesperson offers a customer a special discount for a quote, the salesperson only needs to enter this discount once and does not have to do manual calculations or manual data entry to apply the discount to each line item.

The user can enter the discount amount, discount percent, or target total (the total for the selected line items after the discount has been applied).

This discount is spread across the line items in proportion to the current extended net price for each line item. Discounts are iterative and are applied to the current price and amount, not to the start price and amount. The discount for each line item equals the difference between its current unit net price and its new unit net price, multiplied by the quantity.

Spread discount can apply to hierarchical products and services. For example, a computer is a product made of many components. If a customer buying twenty computers gets a discount, you can enter the discount for the entire quote. When you click Spread, the discount will be spread among the twenty computers and among the components of each computer.

**NOTE:** NOTE: When the end user enters a spread discount, it replaces any previous discounts, including line item discounts that have the Keep Discount check box checked.

### ***To spread a manual discount across line items***

- 1** Navigate to the Quote that you want to work with, and click the Line Items view tab.
- 2** (Optional) If you want to spread the discount among selected items, select multiple items in the Line Items list.
- 3** (Optional) To spread the discount among items that are a specific product type, select that type in the Product Type drop-down list.
- 4** In the Totals form under the Line Items list, click Spread Discount.

- 5 Complete the fields in the Spread Discount dialog box, and click Spread. The fields are described in Table 8.

Table 8. Price and Discount Fields for Individual Line Items

Field	Comment
Type	Select which items you want to spread the discount among. The options are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Entire Document.</b> Spreads discount among all the line items. This is the default if items are not multi-selected.</li> <li>■ <b>Selected Items.</b> Spreads discount among the selected line items. This is the default if items are multi-selected.</li> <li>■ <b>Product.</b> Spreads discount among all line items that are products.</li> <li>■ <b>Service.</b> Spreads discount among all line items that are services.</li> <li>■ <b>Training.</b> Spreads discount among all line items that are training.</li> </ul>
Current Total	Displays the total cost before this spread discount is applied.
Discount Amount	Enter the total amount of the discount. This amount will be subtracted from the current total and spread among the line items. (You may enter only one of these three types of discounts.)
Discount Percent	Enter a percent discount. This discount will be applied to the line items. (You may enter only one of these three types of discounts.)
Target Total	Enter the total price for the quote after the discount. The difference between the current total and the target total will be spread among the line items. (You may enter only one of these three types of discounts.)

After you click Spread, your Siebel application performs the spread and enters unit net price and discount amount for each line item. If the line items previously had individual discounts, they are overridden by this spread. The Keep Discount box is automatically checked.

## Adding Shipping Information

End users specify the following shipping information for a quote or order:

- Ship-to information, including account name, contact name, and address.
- Shipping method, terms, and carrier, which are factor in shipment cost.
- Whether all the items should be shipped at the same time (Shipping Complete).
- Whether all the items should be delivered at one time (Single Delivery).

When a user is working with a quote, the user specifies one shipping address for the entire quote. When a user is working with an order, the user can specify different shipping addresses for individual line items.



This task is part of the “Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders” on page 71

**NOTE:** If you want different line items on an order to be shipped to different locations, see “To specify different ship-to addresses for different line items in an order” on page 89.

**To add shipping information to a quote or an order**

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order with which you want to work.
- 2 Click the Fulfillment view tab.

The Ship To Account, Site, Contact, and Address are automatically populated based on the account information.

- 3 Change the default shipping information, if necessary, and fill in the Fulfillment form. Some fields are described in the following table.

Field	Comments
Shipping Method	Required. The method by which products should be shipped.
Shipment Terms	Required. The terms for shipment.
Carrier	Required. The carrier to be used for shipping.
Ship Complete	Check this box to indicate that all items in the order should be shipped together.
Single Delivery	Check this box to indicate that all items in the order should be delivered at one time.

- 4 (Optional.) Enter a Requested Date and Source if desired. For more information, see “Checking Availability to Promise (ATP)” on page 91.

**To specify different ship-to addresses for different line items in an order**

- 1 Navigate to the order for which you want to specify ship-to information.
- 2 Click the Line Items view tab and select the line item of interest.
- 3 Click the Line Detail view tab, below the Line Items list.

A default ship to address appears, based on the address entered in the Fulfillment view tab.

- 4 For any line item which you want to have a different shipping address, enter a Ship To Last Name and Address in the Line Details form.

## Calculating Shipping Charges

Shipping charges depend on the shipping method and carrier used.

The end user should enter shipping information before calculating shipping charges. For information, see “Adding Shipping Information” on page 88.

This task is part of the [“Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders”](#) on page 71

### ***To calculate shipping charges***

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order with which you want to work.
- 2 Click the Fulfillment view tab.
- 3 Select the Shipping Method and Carrier.
- 4 Click the Line Items view tab.
- 5 In the Totals subview, click the Calculate Shipping button.

The shipping charge is calculated and appears in the Totals form.

## **Calculating Taxes**

If you do not have third-party software to calculate taxes, an end user can enter tax rates manually.

If your Siebel application has been integrated with third-party tax, an end user can use the Calculate Taxes button to determine taxes and insert them in a quote or order. If your application is not integrated with third-party tax software, the end user can enter a tax rate manually.

If a customer is tax exempt, an end user can indicate that on the Payments view tab. Select the Tax Exempt Flag field and enter a reason and tax exempt certification ID.

For customizable products, taxes may be calculated either on the individual components, or on the extended price for the customizable product. The method used is determined through the Product Administration screen.

**NOTE:** If you change items or prices in the quote or order, be sure to recalculate the taxes when you are finished.

This task is part of the [“Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders”](#) on page 71

### ***To calculate taxes by entering a tax rate manually***

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order with which you want to work.
- 2 Click the Payment tab and check the Tax Rate field. If a rate is not yet assigned, click Select and assign the appropriate tax rate.

**NOTE:** In a quote, click the Show More button to see the Tax Rate field.

- 3 Click the Totals view tab to see the taxes.

### ***To calculate taxes using third-party tax software***

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order with which you want to work.

- 2 Make sure the ship-to address is accurate.

The ship-to address is used by third-party tax software when determining the tax rate. When line items in an order have different ship-to addresses, different tax rates may apply to the line items. For information about entering ship-to information, see ["Adding Shipping Information" on page 88](#).

- 3 Click the Totals view tab and in the Totals form click Calculate Taxes.

The tax on the items appears in the Tax field on the Totals form.

## Checking Availability to Promise (ATP)

Your Siebel application can check with your back-office software to determine the availability of products in a quote or order, so that an end user can confirm availability for a customer. Using this feature, an end user can request delivery by a particular date, inquire about availability, and then reserve the items. An end user can also request that items be shipped from a particular source, such as a warehouse or other inventory location. If a customer decides they do not need all of the items, the end user can also unreserve items from the quote or order.

**NOTE:** Your Siebel application must be set up to make special calls to your back-office system in order to use this functionality. For details, see ["Process of Setting Up Third-Party Product Availability Applications" on page 49](#)

An end user can specify a requested date and source for the entire quote or order, or for individual line items. The end user can also request that certain items be shipped together, or that all items be shipped together.

This task is part of the ["Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders" on page 71](#)

### ***To check availability and reserve items in a quote or order***

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order for which you want to check availability.
- 2 Click the Fulfillment view tab.
- 3 In the Fulfillment form, enter any requested information that applies for the entire quote or order. The following table shows some of the fields you may want to set.

Field	Comments
Requested Date	The date you would like the items delivered. When entered in the fulfillment form, this date is for the entire quote or order; it will be copied onto each line item. Leave this field blank to request the earliest possible date.
Ship Complete	Check this field to indicate that the order needs to be shipped complete or not at all. All line items are assigned the number one in the Package field.
Source	Use this field to request that the items in the quote or order be shipped from a particular source. Leave this field blank to indicate that any source is OK. This source will be copied to each line item.
Single Delivery	Use this field to indicate that all line items in the order should be shipped from a single source and have a single delivery date.

- 4 Make any changes to the requested information for individual line items. The following table shows some fields you might want to change.

Field	Comments
Requested Quantity	Defaults to the quantity of the line item being ordered.
Requested Date	Leave this field blank to request the earliest possible date.
Source	Use this field to request that information be shipped from a particular source. Leave this field blank to indicate that any source is OK.
Package	Use this field to indicate items that should be treated as one package and use the same delivery requirements. For example, if you have five items in an order, but primarily care that three items be shipped and delivered together, you would enter the same number in the Package column of each of those three records. If you check the Ship Complete field, a one is entered in the Package field for each item, indicating that the entire quote or order is one package.

- 5 Check availability for individual line items or for all line items.

- To check availability for an individual item, select the line item in the Line Items list below the Fulfillment form, and then click Inquire.
- To check availability for all items at once, in the Fulfillment form, click Inquire All.

Your Siebel application checks with your back-office system to determine availability for the line item, and the fulfillment engine returns information to the Promised Schedule Lines list.

- 6 If appropriate, reserve individual items or all items.

- To reserve individual items, in the Line Items list below the Fulfillment form, select the items and click Reserve.
- To reserve all items at once, in the Fulfillment form, click Reserve All.

Your Siebel application sends a reservation request to your back-office system and the fulfillment engine returns an indication that the items are promised to the Promised Schedule Lines list.

**NOTE:** You can reserve items without having previously inquired about them.

When a line item is reserved, the requested quantity, date, and source are read-only. If you need to make a change to any of those settings, you must unreserve the items first.

## Unreserving Items in a Quote or Order

If a customer no longer wants items they previously reserved, the end user can unreserve items in a quote or order.

### *To unreserve items in the quote or order*

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order with which you want to work.

- 2 Click the Fulfillment view tab.
- 3 In the Line Items list, select the items which you want to unreserve and click Unreserve.
- 4 If you want to unreserve all items in the quote or order, click Unreserve All.

## Splitting Line Items To Accommodate Different Requested Dates

A customer ordering a large quantity of the same item may want to request delivery of part of the order at two or more different times. In this case, the end user can split the line item, assigning quantities and requested dates to each new line. To split a line item, the end user enters two or more records in the Requested Schedule Lines and specifies the quantity and dates for each.

### *To split a line item across requested dates*

- 1 In the Line Items list under the Fulfillment form, select the line item that you want to split.
- 2 In the Requested Schedule Lines list, click New and enter the requested date and quantity for the first batch.
- 3 Add another record in the Requested Schedule Lines list for the second batch.
- 4 Continue to add records until you have the appropriate number of delivery requests. Make sure that the total quantity matches the quantity in the Line Items list.

## Working with Payment Information for Quotes or Orders

End users enter billing and payment information in the Payments view tab of a quote or order.

In a quote, payment information is entered in one Payment form.

In an order, additional forms and fields are provided. The Order Payment form contains some general fields related to payment, such as bill-to and pay-to information, and payment terms. Specific information about payments are recorded in the Payment Lines list, below the Payment form, and in the Payment Details form, below the Payment Lines list.

Siebel Order Management provides these payment methods: credit card, purchase order, check, money wire, cash, and stored value. Your company may add other payment methods through list-of-values administration.

A customer may use one or more methods of payment for an order. In a quote, only one payment method can be indicated. If the customer wants to use multiple methods, the end user can specify them after the quote becomes an order.

Because the amount of payment detail that can be entered is different for quotes than for orders, separate sets of instructions are provided below.

This task is part of the ["Common Tasks for Creating Quotes and Orders" on page 71](#)

### ***To enter payment information for a quote***

- 1** Navigate to the quote for which you want to enter payment information.
- 2** Click the Payment view tab.
- 3** In the Payment Method field, select the method to be used.
- 4** Complete any necessary fields related to the payment method:
  - For a purchase order or billing number, enter the number in the Purchase Order # field, or select Pending if the customer does not yet have a PO number.
  - For a credit card, complete these fields: Credit Card Type, Credit Card Number: Cardholder's Name, Expiration Month, and Expiration Year.
- 5** If payment terms are appropriate for this quote, in the Payment Terms field, click the select button, highlight the payment terms for this quote, and then click OK.

Your company's business process will determine when payment terms should be used.

### ***To enter payment information for an order***

- 1** Navigate to the order for which you want to enter payment information.
- 2** Click the Payments view tab.
- 3** If payment terms are appropriate for this order, in the Payment Terms field, click the select button, highlight the payment terms for this order, and then click OK.

Your company's business process will determine when payment terms should be used.

- 4** In the Payment Lines list, below the Payment form, click the New button to add a payment line item.

For the first payment line, the total amount of the order is copied into the Transaction Amount field.

**NOTE:** If this order was created from a quote which included payment information, that information appears as a payment line item.

- 5** If the customer will use more than one payment method, change the amount in the Transaction Amount field to the amount for this first payment method.
- 6** In the Payment Method field, select the method for the transaction amount.

The default payment method is Credit Card.

- 7 In the Payment Detail form below the Payment Lines list, complete additional fields for the selected payment method. For details about important fields for each payment type, see [“Payment Fields for Payment Methods” on page 95](#). The required fields for each method are listed in the following table:

Payment Method	Required Information
Credit card	In the Payment Type field, select the type of credit card.  Complete these additional fields: Credit Card Number: Card Holder, Expiration Month, Expiration Year, and Billing Address.
Purchase order	In the Purchase Order # field, enter the number.
Check	In the Payment Type field, select the type of check.
Stored value	In the Payment Type field, select the type of credit.
Cash	No additional information required.
Wire transfer	No additional information required.

- 8 For credit card and purchase order payments, check the customer’s credit.

- For a purchase order payment, click Credit Check.
- For a credit card payment, click Authorize.

**NOTE:** For sales orders, you will typically use Authorize before placing the order. Then later, after the order has been filled, you may return and click Settle. When creating field service orders or cash and carry orders, you may want to use Authorize and Settle instead of Authorize at the time of order.

- 9 Review the Payment Status field and select a status, if appropriate.

You may return to change this field later, for example, after receipt of a check. For details about changing the payment status, see [“Changing the Status of a Payment” on page 101](#).

For each additional payment method, repeat [Step 4](#) through [Step 9](#). When you add another payment method, the transaction amount will default to the remaining amount not yet associated with a payment method.

## Payment Fields for Payment Methods

Each payment method requires different information. When an end user adds a payment method to an order, the Payment Details form below the Payment Lines list shows the appropriate fields for that payment method.

The available buttons on the form also change, to reflect the appropriate actions for that payment type. For example, a cash payment does not need to be authorized or settled, while a credit card payment does.

The tables below list important fields for each of the payment methods.

- Checks - [Table 9 on page 97](#)

- Credit Cards - [Table 10 on page 97](#)
- Purchase Orders - [Table 11 on page 99](#)
- Wire Transfers - [Table 12 on page 100](#)



■ Stored Values - Table 13 on page 100

Table 9. Payment Detail Fields for Checks

Important Fields	Description
Transaction Amount	Amount for the individual payment transaction.
Payment Method	Check
Payment Type	Type of check being used: Personal, Corporate, or Cashiers.
Check Number	The identifying check number.
Date of Birth	The customer's date of birth.
Checking Account Number	The bank account number for the check.
ABA Code	The American Banking Association code for the bank on the check.
Social Security #	The customer's social security number.
Drivers License State	The state in which the customer has a drivers license.
Drivers License #	The customer's drivers license number.
Bill To Account Name and Address	Name and address of the account being billed for this payment line item. Defaults from the Payment form.
Authorization Code	Code indicating that authorization of the check has been given.
Authorization Date	Date authorization was given for the check. May be entered manually or configured to be entered automatically.
Check Mailing Address	Your company's mailing address, to tell the customer where to mail the check.
Payment Status	Defaults to Pending Receipt of Check Receipt. Change this after the check has been received and deposited, and funds received.

Table 10. Payment Detail Fields for Credit Cards

Important Fields	Description
Transaction Amount	Amount for the individual payment transaction.
Payment Method	Credit Card
Payment Type	The type of credit card. Out-of-the-box, available types are Visa, MasterCard, Discover, and American Express.
Credit Card #	The credit card number.
Expiration Month	The month the credit card expires.
Expiration Year	The year the credit card expires.
Issuing Bank	The name of the bank that issued the card.

Table 10. Payment Detail Fields for Credit Cards

Important Fields	Description
Issuing Bank Phone Number	The phone number for the bank that issued the card.
Credit Card Holder	Name of the person on the credit card.
Billing Address, City, State, Zip	Address fields for the person responsible for this payment line item. Defaults to the account’s bill-to address.
Payment Status	<p>After you click Authorize or Authorize and Settle, the credit card authorization process returns one of these values as the status:</p> <p><b>Authorized.</b> Indicates the credit card payment for the transaction amount entered has been approved.</p> <p><b>AVS Failed.</b> Indicates that the address entered for the customer did not match the address in the Address Verification System (AVS).</p> <p><b>Card Verification Declined.</b> Indicates this payment was declined because the card could not be verified.</p> <p><b>Charged.</b> Indicates the charge was authorized and has been charged.</p> <p><b>Declined.</b> Indicates authorization was declined.</p> <p><b>Need Verbal Authorization.</b> Indicates that the bank must call the owner of the card for authorization.</p> <p><b>Referral.</b> Neither approved nor declined. The bank needs to research something related to authorizing this payment.</p>
Authorization Code	Code returned when the transaction was authorized.
Authorization Date	Date the transaction was authorized.
AVS Code	Code provided by the Address Verification System (AVS) to indicate the address for the credit card was verified.
Customer Code	For a corporate customer, a code verifying that the credit card may be used.
Card Verification #	<p>This is a four digit unique identifier that is often printed on the back of a credit card. It is used to reduce fraud because only the person holding the card should know it.</p> <p>This field should be deleted after the number is submitted for authorization.</p>
Merchant ID	Your company’s identifying number. If more than one Merchant ID is available, the correct ID for this payment can be selected from drop-down list.

Table 11. Payment Detail Fields for Purchase Orders

Important Fields	Description
Transaction Amount	Amount for the individual payment transaction.
Payment Method	Purchase Order
Purchase Order #	Number of the purchase order. May display Pending if the order was created from a quote which had Pending as the PO#.
Payment Type	For a purchase order, the payment type is Payment.
Payment Status	Status of the payment. Defaults to Pending Check Receipt. Change this after the funds have been received.
Credit Status	Status information returned from the back office after a credit check is done by clicking Check Credit.
Credit Status As Of	Date the credit check status information was returned.
Credit Check Message	Message text returned with the credit status.
Bill To Account	Name of the account responsible for this payment line item.
Bill To Address	Address of the account to be used in relation to this payment line item.
Approval Date	Date that the purchase order payment was approved.
Approved By	The name of the person who authorized the purchase order.
Authorization Code	Code returned when the payment was authorized.
Authorization Date	Date the payment was authorized. May be the date the funds appear in the account.
Payment Comments	Any comments appropriate for this payment.

Table 12. Payment Detail Fields for Wire Transfers

<b>Important Fields</b>	<b>Description</b>
Transaction Amount	Amount for the individual payment transaction.
Payment Method	Wire Transfer
Originating Bank	The bank sending the transfer.
Branch Bank Address, City, State, Zip	The address of the bank sending the transfer of funds.
Bank Routing #	Routing number for the bank.
Payment Account #	Wire transfer account number.
Date of birth	The customer's date of birth.
Bill To Account Name	Name of the account responsible for this payment line item.
Contact Name	Person to contact in relation to this payment line item.
Contact Phone	Phone number for the contact.
ABA Code	The American Banking Association code for the bank on the check.
Social Security #	The customer's social security number.
Authorization Code	Code returned when the payment was authorized.
Authorization Date	Date the payment was authorized. May be the date you see the funds in the account.
Payment Status	Status of the payment. Defaults to Pending Check Receipt.
Drivers License #	The customer's drivers license number.
Drivers License State	The state in which the customer is licensed to drive.

Table 13. Payment Detail Fields for Stored Value

<b>Important Fields</b>	<b>Description</b>
Transaction Amount	Amount for the individual payment transaction.
Payment Method	Stored Value
Payment Type	Type of stored value. Preconfigured values are Gift Certificate and In-Store Credit
Payment Status	Status of the payment. Defaults to Pending Check Receipt.
Contact Name	Contact name associated with the stored value.
Payment Account #	Number of the account that will provide the payment of the stored value.
Account Name	Name of the account with which the payment is associated. Defaults to the bill-to account.

Table 13. Payment Detail Fields for Stored Value

Important Fields	Description
Authorization Code	Code returned when the payment was authorized.
Authorization Date	Date the payment was authorized. May be the date you see the funds in the account.

## Approving a Payment

Depending on how your company has set up payments, certain payment methods might require approvals before they can be accepted.

The initial payment status is set to pending. A user with approval capabilities will then need to change the status to approved.

**NOTE:** Approving a payment is not the same as authorizing a payment. Authorization performs a credit check through a back-office system.

### To approve a payment

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order for which payment needs to be approved.
- 2 Click the Payment view tab.
- 3 In the Payment Lines list, select the purchase order payment to approve.
- 4 In the Payment Detail form, below the Payment Lines list, enter your name in the Approved By field and enter today’s date in the Approval Date field.

## Changing the Status of a Payment

The status assigned to a payment may be set automatically in some cases (such as when a credit card is authorized), but needs to be set manually in others. For example, when the payment method is a check, the initial status is set to Pending Check Receipt. After a company receives funds for the check, an end user can manually change the status of the payment transaction to Authorized, for example.

Your company may also create business processes that automatically update the status under certain circumstances.

Table 14 lists the possible payment statuses and explains when they are likely to be used.

Table 14. Payment Statuses

Status	Comment
New	Payment information was sent, but confirmation of receipt from the back-office system was not received. The message may not have been received.
Authorized	The payment has been authorized.

Table 14. Payment Statuses

Status	Comment
Declined	The payment has been declined.
Charged	The payment has been charged to a credit card.
Refunded	The payment has been refunded to the customer.
Reversed	The payment shown was previously charged to a credit card, and that charge has been reversed; a credit for the same amount was sent to the credit card.
Referral	Payment has been held by the bank until they can gather additional information.
Pending Check Receipt	A check, purchase order, or wire transfer has been received. Receipt of the payment has not yet occurred.
AVS Failed	Indicates that the address entered for the customer did not match the address in the Address Verification System (AVS). Typically used with credit card payments
Card Verification Declined	A third-party authorization system was not able to verify the credit card.
Need Verbal Authorization	This payment needs to be verbally authorized by the credit card company.

**To change the status of a payment**

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order for which the payment status needs to be changed.
- 2 Click the Payment view tab.
- 3 In the Payment Lines list, select the payment for which you want to change the status.
- 4 In the Payment Detail form, below the Payment Lines list, select the appropriate status in the Payment Status field.

**Viewing Payments**

With Siebel Order Management, end users can review payments by account, type, status, and other important metrics. This can be a quick way to review a number of payments at once. This can be helpful when your company’s payment system is down.

**To review information about a number of payments at once**

- 1 Navigate to the Payments screen.
- 2 Query to display the particular payments you are interested in.
- 3 To see history for a particular payment, highlight it in the Payments list, and review the information in the Payment History tab, below the Payment Detail form.

## Checking Credit for a Purchase Order

An end user can check a customer's credit when the payment method is a purchase order.

The end user can also check credit when payment is via credit card. For information, see ["Authorizing and Settling Credit Card Payments" on page 103](#).

### **To check credit for a purchase order**

- 1 Navigate to the quote or order which you are working.
- 2 Click the Payment view tab.
- 3 If necessary, enter the purchase order information.
- 4 In the Payment form, click Credit Check.

Your Siebel application sends an authorization request to your back office or financial system to confirm whether the purchase order is valid and the payment can be authorized.

The back-office system returns information to three fields: Credit Status, Credit Status As Of, and Credit Check Message.

## Authorizing and Settling Credit Card Payments

In an order, an end user can check authorization of payment by credit card and can then settle the payment, to collect the amount authorized.

The end user can also check credit for purchase orders. For information, see ["Checking Credit for a Purchase Order" on page 103](#).

For credit card authorization to be available, your Siebel application must have implemented integration with another payment processor. For more information, see *Siebel eSales Administration Guide*.

**NOTE:** The user can authorize and settle credit card payments only in orders. You can use Siebel Tools to make authorization available in quotes also: you must expose the Authorize button in the Payment view of the Quotes screen.

### **To authorize and settle a credit card payment in an order**

- 1 Navigate to the order with which you are working.
- 2 Click the Payments view tab.
- 3 If necessary, add a Payment Line and enter the credit card payment information, or select the payment line containing the credit card payment.
- 4 Perform one of the following:
  - To authorize the credit card payment, in the Payment Detail - Credit Card form, click Authorize.
  - To settle a payment that has previously been authorized, click Settle.

- To authorize and settle a credit card payment at the same time, click Authorize and Settle.

Your Siebel application sends an authorization request to a third-party payment processing system to confirm whether the payment can be authorized, and settled, if appropriate.

**NOTE:** When the end user clicks Authorize or Authorize and Settle, credit check calls a payment processing system to approve the transaction. Sometimes an error will be returned, or the payment will be rejected. When this occurs, the end user can use the status and any error message returned to determine the appropriate course of action.

### Authorizing a Credit Card Payment Manually

When the credit check of a credit card payment returns the Payment status Declined or Referred, the end user will need to assess the reason the payment has not been approved. If the end user determines that the payment is good, he or she can manually authorize the payment. In such a case, the end user should obtain an authorization code verbally from the credit card company.

#### **To manually authorize a credit card payment**

- 1 Navigate to the order with which you want to work.
- 2 Click the Payments view tab and select the credit card payment line with the Payment Status of Declined or Referred.
- 3 In the Authorization Code field, enter the authorization code.
- 4 When you are prompted to confirm the change to the order, click Yes.

Your Siebel application accepts the new entry and the credit status on the line item is changed to Authorized. A note is displayed in the Payment History with the change request date and requestor. This manually entered code will be used to validate the order approval with the bank during settlement processes.

### Checking Payment History

It is important to be able to explain to customers all of the transactions that relate to their payment method. An end user can see all transactions against a specific payment line by checking the payment history. For example, if a credit card is authorized manually, that action will be noted in the history, along with the date and requestor.

The specific changes that are recorded in the payment history are determined by settings your company makes in the Application Administration screen > Audit Trail view. For complete information about setting up Audit Trail, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

#### **To check payment history**

- 1 Navigate to the order for which you want to check payment history.
- 2 Click the Payments view tab.
- 3 In the Payment Lines list, below the Payments form, select the payment for which you want to see history information.



- 4 Click Payment History.

The Payment History dialog box appears, listing information about changes to the payment item.

## Entering Refunds

An end user can enter a refund of a credit card payment for a customer, when appropriate. Refunds are given after a settlement of a payment has occurred and funds have been transferred.

### ***To enter a refund***

- 1 Navigate to the order for which you want to enter a refund.
- 2 Click the Payments view tab.
- 3 In the Payment Lines list, below the Payments form, select the credit card payment for which you want to enter a refund.

Click Refund.



# 6

## Working with Quotes

This chapter describes how end users work with existing quotes. It includes the following sections:

- “About Quotes” on page 107
- “Verifying a Quote” on page 108
- “Updating an Opportunity from a Quote” on page 108
- “Including Quote Items in a Forecast” on page 109
- “Accessing An Existing Quote” on page 109
- “Revising a Quote” on page 110
- “Converting a Quote to an Order” on page 110
- “Converting a Quote to an Agreement” on page 111
- “Displaying Charts to Analyze Quotes” on page 111

For information about creating a new quote, see [Chapter 5, “Creating a Quote or Order.”](#)

### About Quotes

A quote is an offer to a customer for specific products and services at a specific price. Quotes can be generated by end users such as call center agents, sales representatives, and sales administrators. The quote may include products and services (configured to show the customer-selected attributes), effective dates, price lists, any discounts by line item and by account, and the price per item.

### The Quote Header Summary

A Quote header summary appears at the top of each Quote detail screen. The header summary contains key information fields, and remains present on the screen as the end user accesses the various view tabs to enter and review information during the quote process. [Figure 4](#) shows an example of the Quote header summary.

Quote #:	Account:	Discount:	Total:
1-254PE	Communication Services		\$500.00
*Name:	Opportunity:	Price List:	*Status:
Quote 12/14/2001 4:14:07 PM		Application List Prices - eBusine	In Progress

Figure 4. Quote Header Summary

## Verifying a Quote

Your company may request that end users verify a quote manually, or the verification process may be handled automatically through a customized workflow process. End users should check with the application administrator to find out how the verification process is handled for your company.

When an end user verifies a quote manually, quote verification performs the following:

- Verifies that the price list is valid. This includes checking that:
  - The price list exists in the dialog box
  - The price list starts before the quote's start date and ends after the quote's end date (if the quote start date and end date exist)
- Verifies that the products within the line items are valid. This includes checking that:
  - The product exists in the dialog box
  - The product starts before the quote's start date and ends after the quote's end date (if the quote start date and end date exist)
  - The product has valid attributes
  - The product has the correct list price
- Checks to see if a configurable product has been added. If it has, verifies that all required components are included
- Verifies that the discount amount of the quote does not exceed the quote's total list price
- Checks credit status, if a purchase order has been entered as a payment type

### ***To verify a quote manually***

- 1 Navigate to the quote you want to verify.
- 2 In the Quotes list or the Quote header summary, click the menu button and then click Verify.

Your Siebel application checks the validity of the products, price lists, and totals shown in the quote. When verification is complete, you will see a message. Any problems in the quote are detailed.

## Updating an Opportunity from a Quote

When a quote is associated with an opportunity, an end user may want to update the opportunity with any new quote information. It is important to keep opportunity information updated with quote information in order to maintain accurate forecasts and charts. When an end user updates the opportunity, information is updated in the Products and Revenues tab.

**NOTE:** Before updating an opportunity from a quote, verify that the associated price list is available for the quote. If the price list is not available, the product will be deleted from the opportunity.

**To update an opportunity from a quote**

- 1 Navigate to the All Quotes view of the Quotes screen.
- 2 In the Quotes list, select the quote, click the menu button and then click Update Opportunity.

**NOTE:** The Update Opportunity menu option is also available from the menu in the Quote header summary at the top of a quote detail view.

## Including Quote Items in a Forecast

When an end user updates an opportunity from a quote, one piece of information that is sent is whether a product is forecastable. The default setting for this in the quote is determined by a setting in Product Administration. By default, in Product Administration, components of customizable products and product bundles are marked as forecastable, unless explicitly changed. Simple products are marked as forecastable and cannot be changed in Product Administration. Components of bundles are marked as not forecastable by default, but can be changed to forecastable.

If end users want to make sure that a product in a quote will be forecastable, they can review the setting in the quote, and mark it as forecastable if necessary. The Forecastable field is available on the Line Item Detail subview.

**To mark items in a quote as forecastable**

- 1 Navigate to the All Quotes view of the Quotes screen and create a quote.
- 2 Click the Line Items view tab and add the appropriate products and services as line items.
- 3 In the Line Item Detail subview, click the show more button.
- 4 In the Line Items list, select the item you want to check, and make sure that the Forecastable check box is selected. Repeat this step for each product you want to check.
- 5 When you are finished working on the quote, update the opportunity. For details, see ["Updating an Opportunity from a Quote" on page 108](#).

## Accessing An Existing Quote

When an end user wants to review an existing quote or make changes to it, the end user can access the quote from a number of different places in your Siebel application. The procedures in this documentation primarily describe accessing quotes from the Quotes screen, but end users can also access quotes from an opportunity, from an account, from a contact, or from a service request.

**To access an existing quote**

- 1 Navigate to one of the following screens:
  - Quotes > All Quotes
  - Opportunities > All Opportunities
  - Accounts > All Accounts

- Service Requests > All Service Requests
- Contacts > All Contacts

- 2 Click the Quotes view tab. (Not necessary if you are already on the Quotes screen.)
- 3 In the Quotes list, drill down on the quote name.

The Line Items list and Totals subview appear, displaying details of the quote.

The end user can now make additions or changes to the quote, if it is still in progress, or the end user can revise the existing quote, if appropriate. For more information, see [Chapter 5, "Creating a Quote or Order"](#) or ["Revising a Quote" on page 110](#).

## Revising a Quote

End users can make changes to an initial quote to keep it updated with the appropriate products, price lists, discounts, and so forth. During negotiations with a customer, an end user can add or delete products from a quote and compare features and price.

The Revise feature allows an end user to revise your original quote. Revising a quote creates a new quote record with the same quote number. The versions are distinguished by a revision number. All revisions of a quote appear in the quote list.

**NOTE:** Making changes to a quote does not automatically create a revised quote. If the end user wants to keep the original quote and have a revision, the user must complete the steps in the following procedure to create a revised quote.

### ***To revise a quote***

- 1 Navigate to the All Quotes view of the Quotes screen.
- 2 In the Quotes list, select the quote you want to revise.
- 3 Click Revise.

A new quote, with the same quote number is created.

- 4 Revise the information in the quote form, the line items, or other information as needed.

In the Quotes screen you will see both the original quote and the revised quote. You can verify which one is the revision by looking in the Revision column.

**NOTE:** When the end user revises a quote, the original quote becomes inactive and read-only.

## Converting a Quote to an Order

When a customer agrees to purchase the items on a quote, an end user can convert the quote to an order.

**To convert a quote to an order**

- 1 Navigate to the Quotes screen.
- 2 In the Quotes list, locate the quote you want to work with and drill down on the Name hyperlink.
- 3 Review the line items and related details and make sure they contain the correct information.
- 4 Click the Orders view tab.
- 5 Click either Sales Order or Service Order, depending on the type of order you want to create from this quote.

An order is created from the quote, and appears in the Orders list.

- 6 To work with the order, drill down on the order number.  
The Order Screen, Line Items view appears.

## Converting a Quote to an Agreement

Rather than converting a quote to an order, you can convert a quote to an agreement. There are a number of reasons that you would create an agreement from a quote:

- To create recurring service contracts that identify terms and conditions, including service level agreements and payment terms.
- To create of pricing contracts that identify sets of products and services and associated pricing for future purchases.

For more information about agreements, see *Siebel Field Service Guide*.

**To convert a quote to an agreement**

- 1 Navigate to the Quotes screen.
- 2 In the Quotes list, locate the quote you want to work with and drill down on the Name hyperlink.
- 3 Review the line items and related details and make sure they contain the correct information.
- 4 Click the Agreements view tab.
- 5 Click AutoContract.

An agreement is created from the quote, and appears in the Agreements list.

- 6 To work with the agreement, drill down on the agreement number.  
The Agreements Screen, Line Items view appears.

## Displaying Charts to Analyze Quotes

You can use the following charts to analyze quotes:

- **Account Analysis.** Shows the number of quotes for each account.

- **Account Discount Analysis.** Shows the average discount for the quotes for each account.
- **Rep Discount Analysis.** Shows the average discount for the quotes for each sales representative.
- **Status Analysis by Rep.** Shows the status of the quotes for each sales representative. Typical statuses are In Progress, Approved, Accepted, Order Placed.

**NOTE:** The charts analyze all quotes displayed in the Quotes list. It does not matter which quote is selected when you click the Charts view tab. You may display My Quotes view, My Team's Quotes View or All Quotes view before creating a chart. You may also use a query to limit which quotes are displayed in the list and included in the chart.

### ***To display charts analyzing quotes***

- 1** Navigate to the Quotes screen.
- 2** Optionally, use a query to display only the quotes in the Quote list that you want to be included in the chart.
- 3** Click the Charts view tab.
- 4** In the Show drop-down list, select the type of chart you want to view.
- 5** To view different types of chart, such as pie charts and horizontal bar charts, select the chart type from the other drop-down list and click Go.
- 6** If you are viewing the Status Analysis by Rep chart, you can use the By drop-down list to display the result either by sales representative or by status.



# 7

## Working with Orders

This chapter describes how end users work with existing orders. It includes the following topics:

- [“Accessing An Existing Order” on page 114](#)
- [“Submitting an Order” on page 114](#)
- [“Associating an Activity Plan or Activity with an Order” on page 115](#)
- [“Approving an Order” on page 116](#)
- [“Monitoring an Order” on page 116](#)
- [“Revising an Order” on page 117](#)
- [“Processing a Return” on page 118](#)
- 

For information about creating a new order, see [Chapter 5, “Creating a Quote or Order.”](#)

### About Orders

An order is a commitment on the part of the customer to purchase products and services at a specific price. Orders can be generated by sales people from quotes, or may be created directly by call center agents and sales administrators. Orders can be created and placed all at once, or developed in stages as the customer clarifies the configuration of the items, requests availability, payment information, shipping information, and other details. When the order is complete, the end user submits it.

After the order is placed, a call center agent can monitor the order, proactively informing the customer of order status and delivery information. In the case of a customer inquiry, an agent can use the Get Status business service to obtain the latest information and determine the status of the order, if the order is being processed by the back office. In the event that post-order service is required, service requests and returns can be created against the order.

Orders are identified as either sales orders or service orders. Sales orders are generally for new products, while service orders are used to support service parts processing, including part locator, repair depot, and so forth.

End users work with sales orders and service orders in very similar ways, however some features are specific to each type. This chapter focuses primarily on sales orders. For details about working with service orders, see *Siebel Field Service Guide*.

If your company purchased Siebel Incentive Compensation, end users can specify who should receive compensation for an order in the Sales Credit Assignment view tab. For more information, see *Siebel Incentive Compensation Administration Guide*.

## Order Header Summary and Header

Basic information about an order is contained in three forms: the More Info form, Header Details, and the Order header summary.

The More Info form details the information shown in the Orders list, and includes fields that end users may want to use to help identify or locate a particular order, such as account and contact information, order number, requested date, and the order total.

When an end user drills down on a particular order, the user sees an Order header summary at the top of each Order detail screen. This header summary repeats some of the key summary information about an order that the user may want to have in view while working with the various details of an order. For example, the end user can continue to see the total, status, and requested date while entering line items, shipping information, and payment details.

The Header Details form contains information that is applicable to the entire order. Some of the fields in the Header Details form are used to default the corresponding values for the order line items when an end user adds them. For example, end users can set a default discount to be applied to line items as they add them. This minimizes the entry the end user has to do for individual items in large orders. However, end users can still override this with discounts to some or all individual line items, as they add them.

## Accessing An Existing Order

An end user can access an existing order from most of the same places the user can create an order.

### *To access an existing order*

- 1 Navigate to one of the following screens:
  - Orders > All Sales Orders
  - Accounts > All Accounts
  - Service Requests > All Service Requests
  - Contacts > All Contacts
  - Agreements > All Agreements
- 2 If necessary, in the main screen you are working with, click the Orders view tab.
- 3 In the Orders list, drill down on the order number.

The Line Items list and Totals subview appear, displaying details of the order.
- 4 The end user can now continue to work with the order.

## Submitting an Order

After the end user has completed the information for an order, the user submits it. Submitting the order sends the order to the manufacturing system or warehouse system for fulfillment.

Submitting the order typically sets the status to Booked.

Before end users submit an order, they may want to check to make sure it has an Active status, current dates, a valid price list, and that any customizable products have been configured appropriately.

### ***To submit an order***

- 1 Navigate to the order that you want to submit.
- 2 In the Order header summary, click Submit.

If your company has configured an approval process, the order is evaluated by assignment manager rules, and is routed to a manager for approval, if appropriate. If the order meets any approval rules, the order is validated and submitted to your back office system for fulfillment.

## **Associating an Activity Plan or Activity with an Order**

Individual activities or activity plans (collections of activities) can be associated with one or more line items in your order.

Activities are tasks that should be performed after the order has been finalized and submitted. For example, when a customer purchases an item that needs to be installed, an activity template might list all of the activities that need to occur to support that installation. When that template is added to the line item, the activities from it are assigned to the appropriate people, and will appear in their activity lists.

Typically the administrator sets up activity templates in advance so that end users can add them to items in an order. End users can also add individual activities. For information on setting up activity templates, see ["Setting Up Activity Plan Templates" on page 34](#).

### ***To associate an activity plan template with a line item***

- 1 Navigate to the order with which want to associate an activity plan.
- 2 Select the line item that requires activities.
- 3 Click the Activity Plans view tab.
- 4 In the Activity Plans list, click New.

Today's date is assigned as the planned start date for the activities. You can change it, if required.

- 5 Select the appropriate activity plan template from the Templates drop-down list.  
You see the activities associated with the template in the Activities list.
- 6 Click the Activity view tab.

- 7 In the Activity list, make any appropriate adjustments to the activities.

If an employee's name is indicated in the activity, the activity will display for that person when the person goes to the My Activities view.

### **To add an individual activity to a line item**

- 1 Navigate to the order with which you want to associate an activity plan.
- 2 Select the line item that requires activities.
- 3 Click the Activity view tab.
- 4 Click New to add a new record.  
The activity type defaults to Appointment.
- 5 Complete the fields to define the activity.

## Approving an Order

Some orders will require approval. If your company has configured an approval process as part of its order management process, an order may be automatically flagged for approval based on price. A typical configuration of this might cause the status to be changed to Awaiting Approval and the approver's name to be inserted in the Approved by field when the sales representative clicks Submit.

For example, if an end user has authority to place orders for \$1,000, and a customer wants to order merchandise totalling \$1,200, the order needs to be approved before it can be submitted.

The steps below describe the steps an end user might take to approve an order when that user is the approver. The exact steps may vary, depending on your company's configuration of this process.

### **To approve an order**

- 1 Navigate to the Orders screen > All Orders view.
- 2 Sort the list of orders by status and scroll the list, if necessary, to bring orders with the status Awaiting Approval into view.
- 3 Review the order to make sure it meets your approval.
- 4 When you are ready to approve the order, click the More Info view tab and check the Approved field. If necessary, enter today's date in the Approved Date field.

## Monitoring an Order

After an order has been submitted, an end user can monitor it by:

- [Checking the Status of Order Fulfillment and Shipping](#). The end user can do this to make sure that it is being handled appropriately and to provide customers with information about order status and delivery.

- [Checking the Order History](#). The end user can do this to see when the status changed and who made the change.

## Checking the Status of Order Fulfillment and Shipping

An end user can check the status of an order for a customer. The end user may want to obtain order status from other applications.

### **To check the order status**

- 1 Navigate to the order you want to check.
- 2 In the Order header summary, click Get Status.

If your order management process is integrated with a back office system, the Status field is updated with the current information.

- 3 Click the Fulfillment view tab and review the information in the Line Items list, below the Fulfillment form.
- 4 Click the Shipment view tab.

The Shipment list and the Shipment Details form below the list provide current details about the order.

## Checking the Order History

An end user can see when the status of the order changed, and who made the change, by checking the information in the Audit Trail for the order. The specific changes that are recorded in the Audit Trail are determined by settings your company makes in the Application Administration screen. For complete information about setting up Audit Trail, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

### **To check the order history**

- 1 Navigate to the order for which you want to check history.
- 2 Click the Audit Trail view tab.

You see the list of status changes in the Audit Trail list.

# Revising an Order

An end user can edit or revise a customer's original order. This is useful when adding or deleting products, and can also be used if an order has expired. Revising an order creates a new version of the same order. Revising helps an end user keep track of changes as the order evolves.

When an end user revises an order, the status field is automatically set to Pending.

**NOTE:** When an end user revises an order, the original order becomes inactive and read-only.

### ***To revise an order***

- 1 Navigate to the order you want to revise.
- 2 In the Orders list or in the Order header summary, click the menu button and then click Revise.  
A new version of the order is created, with the same order number.
- 3 Make the required changes to the order—add or remove line items, change attributes, or make additional changes.
- 4 In the Order header summary, click Submit.

## **Processing a Return**

When a customer needs to return part of an order, the end user can base the return on the original order.

**NOTE:** Some companies use service requests to create return orders. For more information, see *Applications Administration Guide*.

### ***To process a return***

- 1 Navigate to the order for which a return needs to be processed.
- 2 In the Order header summary, click the menu button and click Copy Record.
- 3 In the new order, change the Order Type to the appropriate return type—RMA Return, RMA Advanced Exchange, or RMA Repair Return.
- 4 In the Line Items list, delete the items that are not being returned from the Order line items list.
- 5 In the Order header summary, click Submit.

# 8

## Data Validation for Order Management

This chapter discusses the data validation manager. It includes the following sections:

- [“About Data Validation Manager” on page 119](#)
- [“Process of Implementing Data Validation Processing” on page 120](#)
- [“Process of Administering Data Validation Rules” on page 120](#)
- [“Process of Invoking the Data Validation Manager Business Service” on page 128](#)

### About Data Validation Manager

Many companies are governed by various regulatory agencies, as well as internal processes and procedures, to verify the quality and accuracy of their transactions. Data validation can involve many types of transactions, including orders, applications, claims, and various other service requests.

Data validation is a key component of many business processes. The Data Validation Manager business service can validate business component data based on a set of rules. In the case of a rule violation, a custom error message appears or a user-defined error code is returned. The validation rules are defined using the Siebel Query Language and can be conveniently constructed using the Personalization Business Rules Designer. The business service centralizes the creation and management of data validation rules without requiring extensive Siebel Tools configuration and does not require the deployment of a new SRF.

The Data Validation Manager business service reduces the need for custom scripts, decreases implementation costs, and increases application performance.

The Data Validation Manager features:

- Search automatically for the proper rule set to execute based on active business objects and views.
- Write validation rules based on fields from multiple business components.
- Apply a validation rule to a set of child business component records to see if a violation occurs from one or more records.
- Invoke specific actions to be performed as a result of a validation.
- Write validation rules that operate on dynamic data supplied at runtime without that data being from business component field.
- Automatic logging of data validation events.

Some example business rules which can be enforced by the Data Validation Manager business service are:

- In an insurance company, claim adjusters are required to enter a closed date whenever they close a claim. If the adjuster tries to close a claim without a closed date, he is prompted with an appropriate error message and the claim record is not committed to the database.
- In a retail bank, different data validation rules are required for each of dozens of different service request types. When a customer service representative creates a new service request, the Data Validation manager identifies the appropriate validation rule set for the specific type of service request and executes the data validation rules of that rule set.
- At a health insurance company, customer service representatives use activity plans and activities to track service requests, and all activities must be closed before the service request can be closed. When the CSR closes the SR, the DVM loops through all associated activities making sure status of each is closed. If any are still open, the SR cannot be closed.

## Process of Implementing Data Validation Processing

There are two processes to automating data validation processing:

- 1 [Process of Administering Data Validation Rules](#)
- 2 [Process of Invoking the Data Validation Manager Business Service on page 128](#)

## Process of Administering Data Validation Rules

To support a given data validation business rule in your organization, you first create a data validation rule set. The rule set is a container which has one or more rule set arguments and one or more validation rules. The rules contain expressions which are evaluated as being true or false. If the expression is evaluated as being false, validation rule actions determine the appropriate error handling behavior.

Administering data validation rules involves the following procedures:

- 1 [Defining a Data Validation Rule Set](#)
- 2 [Defining Rule Set Arguments on page 123](#)
- 3 [Defining Validation Rules on page 124](#)
- 4 [Defining Validation Rule Actions on page 127](#)
- 5 [Activating a Data Validation Rule Set on page 128](#)

This process is part of [Process of Implementing Data Validation Processing on page 120](#).



## Defining a Data Validation Rule Set

You define validation rule sets in the Data Validation Administration view. You can either revise an existing rule set or create a new one.

You can import and export validation rule sets by selecting Export Rule Set and Import Rule Set from the menu button on the Validation Rule Set list. The validation rule set is saved as an XML file for importing and exporting purposes.

When creating a validation rule set, you specify the business object and business component you want to validate. The validation rule set will have one or more arguments and contain one or more individual rules.

### To define a new validation rule set

- 1 Navigate to the Rule Sets view of the Administration - Data Validation screen.
- 2 In the Validation Rule Set form, add a record for each new rule set and complete the necessary fields.

Some fields are described in the following table.

Field	Comments
Business Component	Specifies the business component to be validated. A business component is a fundamental business entity in the enterprise—for example, Opportunity, Account, or Contact.
Business Object	<p>The business object to be validated. A business object denotes a functional area that is a grouping of one or more related business components.</p> <p>Business object is one of the selection criteria under which a rule set is selected for execution. If the Object Search Type input argument of the business service is set to "Business Object", Data Validation Manager will check if the active business object matches the rule set's Business Object value. If there is a match, the rule set will not be excluded based on the Business Object criteria. It may be selected or excluded based on other criteria.</p>
End Date	Specifies the last date this rule set can be used. If not populated, the rule set never expires.
Group	<p>Categorizes rules sets into groups. You can group a number of rule sets together by giving them a common group name. You can then execute these rule sets in one call by setting this group name as the value of the Group input argument of the Data Validation Manager. Data Validation Manager executes these rule sets one by one in no particular order.</p> <p>(Note: If both the Rule Set Name and Group input arguments are specified, the Group input argument will be ignored.)</p>

Field	Comments
Name	Name of this rule set. You can execute a particular rule set by setting this name as the value of the Rule Set Name input argument of the Data Validation Manager.
Conditional Expression	<p>Conditional Expression is one of the selection criteria under which a rule set is selected for execution. If the Conditional Expression is specified (not NULL) for a rule set, Data Validation Manager will exclude the rule set from execution if the conditional expression is evaluated to be FALSE at run time.</p> <p>If the Conditional Expression is not specified, it is interpreted as TRUE.</p> <p>Conditional Expression provides a mechanism to perform different validations on the same business component based on certain field values. For example, you might have many different types of service requests, and each type needs to be validated in a different way. Using conditional expressions based on the Service Request type, Data Validation Manager can select the appropriate rule set to execute.</p>
Start Date	Date when the rule set becomes effective.
Status	<p>Specifies the rule set status. Options include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>In Progress.</b> Default status that appears when the administrator first creates a new rule set or revises an existing rule set. A rule set can only be edited when its status is In Progress.</li> <li>■ <b>Active.</b> Status that appears when the administrator clicks the Activate button. A rule set can only be invoked when its status is Active.</li> <li>■ <b>Outdated.</b> Status that appears when the administrator activates a newer version of the rule set.</li> <li>■ <b>Inactive.</b> Status that appears when the administrator selects Deactivate Rule Set from the applet level menu.</li> </ul>
Version	A numeric value to differentiate various versions of the same rule set. Clicking the Revise button creates a new version of an existing rule set with the version number incremented by one.
Aggregate Error	When this field is checked (TRUE), Data Validation Manager will ignore the Immediate Display flag of each rule it processes. It will aggregate all the error messages of the rules that are FALSE into one string, and then display the aggregated error message to the end user.

**To revise an existing validation rule set**

- 1 Navigate to the Administration - Data Validation screen.
- 2 In the Rule Sets list, select a rule set and click Revise.

Clicking Revise creates a new version of the rule set and sets the Status to In Progress.

- 3 Make the appropriate changes in the Validation Rule Set form and click Activate.

Clicking Activate changes the Status from In Progress to Active and makes the record read-only. The old validation rule set still appears, but the status is now Outdated.

**NOTE:** You can delete a Validation Rule Set in the same way you delete any other record in Siebel applications. When you delete a Validation Rule Set, that rule set's Validation History is also deleted.

This task is part of [Process of Administering Data Validation Rules on page 120](#).

### ***To export a validation rule set***

- 1 Navigate to the Administration - Data Validation screen.
- 2 In the Rule Set list, select the rule set or rule sets that you want to export.
- 3 In the Rule Set list, select the validation rule set you wish to export and choose Export Rule Set from the menu drop-down list.
- 4 Follow the on-screen prompts to save the rule set as an XML file.

### ***To import a validation rule set***

- 1 Navigate to the Administration- Data Validation screen.
- 2 From Validation Rule Set list menu drop-down list, choose Import Rule Set.
- 3 In the Validation Rule Set Import dialog box, locate the file you wish to import and click Import. The imported rule set appears having a status of In Progress.
- 4 To activate the imported validation rule set, select it in the Validation Rule Set list and click Activate.

Clicking Activate changes the rule set Status to Active and makes the record read-only.

## **Defining Rule Set Arguments**

You can write a validation expression of a rule which contains user-defined arguments using a syntax such as [Some Buscomp Field Name] = [&Argument Name]. These arguments must be first defined in the Arguments list. Values of these arguments can be set using the Default Value field. They can also be set at run time by supplying an input argument to the Data Validation Manager business service. The input argument name must be the same as the argument name defined in the Arguments list.

Business service input arguments will overwrite whatever default values you have specified in the Arguments list. The default values only take effect when input arguments are not provided.

You can only define arguments for validation rule sets that have a status of In Progress.

This task is part of [Process of Administering Data Validation Rules on page 120](#).

**To define a rule set argument**

- 1 Navigate to the Administration - Data Validation screen.
- 2 Select a rule set with a status of In Progress and drill down on the rule set name.
- 3 Select the Arguments view tab, create a new record, and complete the necessary fields. Some fields are described in the following table.

Field	Comments
Argument Name	A string that specifies the name of the argument. You use the notation [&Argument Name] to refer to the value of the argument in a rule expression.
Default Value	The value that the argument will take on in the absence of a business service input argument of the same name.
Comments	Free text field to provide explanations for the argument.

**Defining Validation Rules**

For each rule set you define one or more validation rules. These rules represent the validation criteria.

You can only define rules for validation rule sets that have a status of In Progress.

This task is part of [Process of Administering Data Validation Rules on page 120](#).

**To define a validation rule**

- 1 Navigate to the Administration - Data Validation screen.
- 2 Select a rule set with a status of In Progress and drill down on the rule set name.
- 3 Select the Rules view tab, create a new record, and complete the necessary fields. Some fields are described in the following table.

Field	Comments
Sequence #	Identifies the numeric sequence of this rule in the rule set. The application evaluates rules in numerical order based on this number.
Business Component	The business component upon which the rule is based.

Field	Comments
Expression	<p>A statement expressed in Siebel Query Language. The application evaluates whether the expression is true or false. If true, the data validation manager proceeds to evaluate the next rule. If false, the application performs the actions defined for the rule.</p> <p>You can refer to a business component field value using the notion [Field]. For example, if the business component of the rule is Opportunity, then an expression [Sales Stage] IS NOT NULL means that you want to know of the Sales Stage field of the Opportunity business component contains a value or not.</p> <p>You can use the syntax [BC.Field] to refer to a field of a business component different from the one of the validation rule. For example, you may have a rule which has its business component set as Opportunity. You can write an expression [Sales Stage] IS NOT NULL AND [Account.Status] = "Active". [Account.Status] refers to the Status field of the Account business component. Without a prefix, [Sales Stage] refers to the Sales Stage field of the business component (i.e. Opportunity) of the rule.</p> <p>You can also use the syntax [&amp;Argument] to refer to a rule set argument. For example, you may have a rule expression [&amp;Answer] = "Yes". Here the rule set argument Answer has already been defined in the Arguments List Applet. Once defined, the argument becomes a business service input argument which you can populate with dynamic values at run time (e.g. via workflow).</p> <p>You can either enter the statement directly in the field or click the Expression select button to launch the Expression Designer. The Expression Designer allows you to construct an expression by pointing and clicking on a pop up window, perform syntax validation, and lookup definitions of built-in functions supported by the Siebel Query Language.</p> <p>For more information on the Expression Designer, see <i>Developing and Deploying Siebel eBusiness Applications</i>.</p>
Message	<p>The text of the error message. If the expression is evaluated to be false, the application either displays the error message or writes it to a log file. The maximum number of characters is 250.</p> <p>For more information viewing the validation log file, see <a href="#">"Viewing a Validation History" on page 133</a>.</p>
Apply To	<p>This field takes on two values: Current Record and All Records.</p> <p>When Current Record is chosen, Data Validation Manager applies the validation rule to the current active business component record. When All Records is chosen, Data Validation Manager applies the validation rule to all business component records.</p>

Field	Comments
Return Code	<p>An alphanumeric value that the application may log in the validation history record and store in the Return Code output argument of the business service, if the expression is evaluated to be false. Whatever existing value of that output argument will be overwritten. Thus the Return Code output argument of the business service will contain the Return Code of the last rule that is evaluated as FALSE.</p> <p>Maximum number of characters is 30.</p> <p>For more information, see <a href="#">"Viewing a Validation History" on page 133</a>.</p>
Start Date	<p>Corresponds to the time when the rule becomes effective. A rule is only evaluated if the Start Date is equal to or earlier than the current date.</p>
End Date	<p>Specifies the last date this rule can be used. If not populated, the rule set never expires. A rule is only evaluated if the End Date is equal to or later than the current date.</p>

- 4 Select the Rule Detail view tab and complete the necessary fields. Some fields are described in the following table.

Field	Comments
Stop on Error	<p>If the expression is evaluated to be false and this field is checked (TRUE), the application will ignore all subsequent rules.</p>
Immediate Display	<p>Defines error message behavior. If the expression is evaluated to be false, and both Immediate Display and Stop on Error flags are checked (enabled), the application immediately displays the specified message .</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If, for the rule set, Aggregate Errors is enabled, the Immediate Display flag for each rule is ignored. Instead, the application aggregates all error messages of the rules that are FALSE into one string, and then display the aggregated error message to the end user.</p>
Message	<p>The text of the error message. If the expression is evaluated to be false, the application either displays the error message or writes it to a log file. The maximum number of characters is 250.</p> <p>For more information viewing the validation log file, see <a href="#">"Viewing a Validation History" on page 133</a>.</p>

## Defining Validation Rule Actions

The Data Validation Manager business service can perform a sequence of actions when a rule expression is evaluated to be FALSE. Each action can be set to update a business component in the active business object or to execute a business service.

Each action has a sequence number. Data Validation Manager executes the actions in ascending order of their sequence numbers.

This task is part of [Process of Administering Data Validation Rules on page 120](#).

### To define a data validation rule action

- 1 Navigate to the Rule Sets view of the Administration - Data Validation screen.
- 2 Click the Rules view tab and select the rule for which you want to define an action.
- 3 Select the Actions view tab, create a new record, and complete the necessary fields.

Some fields are described in the following table.

Field	Comments
Sequence #	Identifies the numeric sequence of this rule in the rule action. The application executes actions in numerical order based on this number.
Type	Can either be Business Component or Business Service. Determines whether the action is to update the current active business component or execute a business service.
Business Component	Name of business component which you want to update. This field is editable only when Type is set to Business Component.
Business Service Name	Name of the business service you want to invoke. This field is editable only when Type is set to Business Service.
Business Service Method	Method of the business service you want to invoke.
Business Service Context	Name - value pairs which you can use to pass certain values as input arguments to the business service. For example, "input argument 1", "value 1", "input argument 2", "value 2".

- a** For each action record of type Business Component, enter the field and value information as described in the following table.

Field	Comments
Field	Name of the business component field you want to update.
Value	Value with which you want to update the business component field. This value must be a constant and cannot be an expression.

## Activating a Data Validation Rule Set

The final step in administering data validation rules is to activate the rule set. Only then can it be executed by the Data Validation Manager business service.

After you have added and defined all rule set arguments and rules, activate the rule set. After you activate the rule set, it becomes read-only and can not be edited.

You can only define arguments and rules for validation rule sets that have a status of In Progress. If you want to revise an existing rule set, see ["To revise an existing validation rule set" on page 122](#).

This task is part of [Process of Administering Data Validation Rules on page 120](#).

### **To activate a rule set**

- 1 Navigate to the Administration- Data Validation screen.
- 2 In the Rule Sets list, select the rule set you wish to activate.

**NOTE:** The status of the rule set must be In Progress in order for you to activate it.

- 3 Click the Activate button on the Rule Sets list.

Clicking Activate changes the status of the rule set to Active and makes the record read-only.

## Process of Invoking the Data Validation Manager Business Service

You can invoke the Data Validation Manager two different ways:

- [Invoking Data Validation Manager from a Runtime Event on page 128](#)
- [Invoking Data Validation Manager from a Workflow on page 130](#)

In either case, you can affect how the business service works by populating certain input arguments of the business service.

You can view the results of the business service execution by viewing the validation history log:

- [Viewing a Validation History on page 133](#)

## Invoking Data Validation Manager from a Runtime Event

You can invoke the Data Validation Manager business service from a runtime event. When the specified runtime event occurs, the application invokes the business service. To invoke the business service from an event you first define the event in the Administration - Runtime Events view. For more information on runtime events, see *Personalization Administration Guide*.

### **To define a runtime event to invoke the Data Validation Manager**

- 1 Navigate to the Action Sets view of the Administration - Runtime Events screen.



- 2 In the Actions Sets list, add a record and complete the necessary fields.
- 3 In the Actions list, add a record and complete the necessary fields.

Some fields are described in the following table.

Field	Comments
Action Type	Specifies the type of action. Select BusService.
Sequence	Number describing the order in which the action occurs. Execution begins with the action with the lowest sequence number. Actions with the same sequence number are executed in random order. Actions occur in sequence until all actions are completed.
Active	Check the box to indicate whether the action will be triggered or not. Inactive actions are ignored when the event occurs. This is a quick way to turn off an action without changing the start and end dates.

- 4 In the More Info form, complete the fields described in the following table.

Field	Value	Comments
Business Service Name	Data Validation Manager	Name of the business service to invoke, if the conditional expression evaluates to TRUE and the type is BusService.  Enter the value exactly as shown.
Business Service Method	Validate	Method to invoke on the business service.  Enter the value exactly as shown.
Business Service Context	Example: "Rule Set Name", "Validation", "Enable Log", "Y"  These input arguments are equivalent to those presented in <a href="#">Step n on page 132</a> .	Name-value pairs to specify the inputs to the business service method. Both the name and the value must be enclosed by quotation marks and separated by a comma and a space after the comma.

**CAUTION:** Failure to use the syntax specified in the Business Service Context field may result in errors.

- 5 Click the Events view tab to associate the event with an action set.

- 6 In the Events list, add a record and complete the fields as described in the following table.

Field	Comments
Name	Optional. Select an event alias from the drop-down list. Selecting a name automatically populates the Object Type, Object Name, Event, and Subevent fields. This is based on the event template created in the Event Aliases list.  For more information on creating event aliases, see <i>Personalization Administration Guide</i> .
Sequence	Required. An event can trigger multiple action sets. Enter numbers in this field to control when the action set associated with this event in this record executes relative to other action sets associated with this event.
Object Type	Required. Select BusComp from the drop-down list.
Object Name	The name of the application, business component, or applet (depending on the object type) to which the event occurs.
Event	Required. Select from the drop-down list. The choices depend on which object type you choose. Valid values include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Use the PreWriteRecord business component event if you want to control whether a record can be written to the database, based on the outcome from the validation.</li><li>■ Use the PreDeleteRecord business component event if you want to control whether a record can be deleted from the database, based on the outcome from the validation</li></ul>
Action Set	Required. Select an action set to run when the event occurs. The Name name is defined in the Action Sets view tab. For more information, see Step 3.

- 7 Either close down and relaunch server or mobile clients or select Reload Runtime Events from Menu.

This task is part of [Process of Invoking the Data Validation Manager Business Service on page 128](#).

## Invoking Data Validation Manager from a Workflow

You can invoke the Data Validation Manager business service from a workflow. This section describes some of the possible steps you can include to enable this invocation. You may need to modify and expand on this procedure to accommodate more complex business requirements. The workflow process you create must contain the following steps:

- **Start.** Initiates the process instance. When the conditions have been met, the application initiates the process instance.
- **Business Service.** A step in a process in which an automated call is made to the Data Validation Manager service. A workflow process definition can have one or more business service steps.
- **End.** A step in a process that specifies when a process instance is finished.

This task is part of [Process of Invoking the Data Validation Manager Business Service on page 128](#). For more information about how to create a start step, business service step, and end step in a workflow, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

When you create the business service step, include the following information:

- In the Business Service form, complete the fields described in the following table.

Field	Value
Business Service	Data Validation Manager
Method	Validate

- In the Input Arguments list, create new records to establish your Input Arguments as described in the following table .

Input Argument	Comments
Active Object	Can attain a value of Y or N. If the value is N or if this input argument is not entered into the list applet, the Business Object and Object ID input arguments must be established and cannot be NULL.
Business Object	The name of the business object (that is, the functional area) to which the event occurs. It is required if an Active Object has not been specified or has a value of N.  By default, the business service uses the primary business component of the business object (if defined).
Enable Log	Valid options include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Y - Application logs all instances when the rule set runs.</li><li>■ N - Application does not track any instances of when the rule set runs.</li></ul> For more information on the Validation log file, see <a href="#">"To view the validation history" on page 134.</a>
Object ID	The row ID of the principle business component of the business object. It is required if an Active Object has not been specified or has a value of N.
Group	Group name to which to restrict data validation rule set selection.
Rule Set Name	In the Value field, enter the name of the rule set to be invoked. For more information, see <a href="#">"To define a new validation rule set" on page 121.</a>

If you want to pass information to another process, you must establish Output Arguments. Output arguments allow you to store a resulting value in a process property. For more information on defining return codes and return messages, see ["To define a validation rule" on page 124.](#)

- In the Output Arguments list, create new records to establish the desired outputs as described in the following table.

Output Argument	Comments
Return Code	Contains the value of the Return Code field of the validation rule.
Return Message	Contains the value of the Message field of the validation rule.

**NOTE:** Both the Return Code and the Return Message will remain empty if the validation succeeds.

## Viewing a Validation History

You can view a history of validation events in the Validation History view. All events display in chronological order.

**To view the validation history**

- Navigate to the Validation History view of the Administration - Data Validation screen.

The Validation History view appears, displaying validation events in reverse chronological order. Some fields are described in the following table.

Field	Comments
BusComp Name	The business component that was validated.
Date	The date the validation event happened.
Last Step #	Sequence number of the rule evaluated to be false or the last rule in the rule set.
Return Code	The rule's Return Code field value.
Return Message	The rule's Message field value.
Started By	The login name of the user who executed this rule.
Status	Specifies the status of the validation result: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ <b>Errored Out.</b> Indicates Stop on Error is True. The current rule is evaluated to be false and further rule evaluation is halted.</li><li>■ <b>Error Proceed.</b> Indicates Stop on Error is False; the current rule is evaluated to be false and the application proceeds to evaluate the next rule.</li><li>■ <b>Completed.</b> Indicates the application has reached the last rule of the rule set and the rule is evaluated to be True.</li></ul>

For more information on defining rule sets and configuring the Return Code and Return Message fields, see ["Defining Validation Rules" on page 124](#).

# 9

## Using Asset-Based Ordering

This chapter describes how end users, such as salespeople and customer service representatives (CSRs), work with quotes and orders using asset-based ordering. It includes the following topics:

- "About Asset-Based Ordering" on page 135
- "Scenario for Asset-Based Ordering" on page 136
- "Creating a Quote" on page 136
- "Creating a Quote That Modifies an Asset" on page 138
- "Ungrouping Quote Line Items (End User)" on page 138
- "Editing Quote Line Items" on page 139
- "Updating an Opportunity From a Quote" on page 140
- "Converting Quotes to Orders" on page 141
- "Editing Order Line Items" on page 141
- "Submitting an Order" on page 142
- "Revising a Submitted Order" on page 142
- "Creating a Follow-On Order" on page 144
- "Modifying the Service Profile" on page 144
- "Deactivating an Installed Asset" on page 145
- "Suspending and Resuming Service" on page 146

### About Asset-Based Ordering

End users create quotes and orders when customers want to:

- Order products or services for the first time. The user must open a new account for the potential customer, and then create a quote and order.
- Change existing products or services, including deactivating services. The user must work with existing information in the database to create a quote and order.

A quote includes instructions (actions) with enough information to generate a price.

The procedures in this chapter use the Account Summary view as their starting point, because it is a central point for viewing information about an account and initiating many order management tasks.

The Account Summary view is part of the Order Processing module. If you have not licensed the Order Processing module, employee end users can start from one of the other screens that allow access to quotes and orders, such as the Quotes screen and Orders screen.

## Scenario for Asset-Based Ordering

This scenario provides an example of a process performed by customer service representatives (CSRs) in a telecommunications company. Your company may follow a different process according to its business requirements.

During a typical day in a customer service organization, a group of CSRs responds to customer phone calls to generate quotes and sales orders.

If the caller is new, the CSR creates an account and adds the caller to the database. If the caller is an existing contact, the CSR searches the database to display the contact's record.

Then the CSR launches Advisor to help understand the customer's needs. For example, if the caller asks questions about your company's product, the CSR can access a summary of product features, literature about the company, and its competitors.

If the conversation leads to a potential sale, the CSR will create a quote and fax, email, or mail it to the caller. The caller can use the quote to get approval to place the order.

The information collected during the call is permanently stored, associated with the contact's record.

When the caller contacts the CSR to place the order, the CSR reviews the quote and converts the quote to an order. Any changes to the product and pricing definitions since the quote was saved are displayed in the quote the CSR views.

The CSR enters any additional information required for the order and submits the order. A new Order record is created. After the order has been fulfilled, trackable items become assets, and appear in the Account Summary view for this customer.

At a later date, the customer may contact the CSR to add or delete items from the order. The order may be pending or in another status, such as complete. In either case, the CSR can generate a quote and order to change the initial order.

## Creating a Quote

End users can use the procedure below to create a quote for an existing customer. This quote will add a new service or product.

**NOTE:** When you use this procedure, the account type determines whether a quote or order is created. If the account type is *Residential*, quotes are not created and all modifications of the service profile create an order directly. For all other account types, a quote is created.

### **To create a quote**

- 1 Navigate to the Account Summary view of the account screen with the appropriate account selected.

The Account Summary view appears.



- 2 In the Installed Asset list, click New.

The Quote form and Line Item list appear.

**NOTE:** If there is already an active quote for this account, it is shown. If there is not already an active quote, a blank new quote appears.

In the Quote form, the Status field displays In Progress and the Quote # field displays a unique number generated by the system. The Quote Name field also displays this unique number, which you may change to a quote name.

- 3 In the Line Items list, click Add Items.
- 4 In the Pick Products dialog box, select the items that the customer wants, and click OK.

The Action field for the line items you added displays Add. For products and services that are customizable, the Customize button is available.

- 5 To customize an item, select it in the Line Items list and click Customize.

A Configurator session launches and displays selection pages.

- 6 Make the selections that the customer wants, and click Done.

The Quote Line Items list appears with the quote.

Some fields in the Line Items list and the Totals form below it are described in the following table:

Field	Comments
Item Net Price	The price of the line item after discounts from pricing rules, volume discounts, or manual discounts. (Read-only)
Net Discount%	The percentage of the start price that the discount equals. If a discount was entered in either Discount Amount or Discount Price, this percentage is calculated based on the discount entered and the start price. (Read-only}
Extended Net Price	Quantity times the unit net price. (Read-only)
Discount Amount	The amount to be discounted per unit, as a dollar figure.
Discount%	The discount amount relative to the unit price, shown as a percentage.
Discount Price	The total amount to be charged for the item, per unit.
Non-Discount Extended Price	The extended start price.

## Creating a Quote That Modifies an Asset

Employee end users can use the procedure below to create a quote that is based on an asset. For example, a customer has five phone lines installed as part of a small business service product. The customer calls and wants to add additional phone lines. You would use the existing service item as the basis for a new quote that adds additional phone lines.

**NOTE:** When you use this procedure, the account type determines whether a quote or order is created. If the account type is *Residential*, quotes are not created and all modifications of the service profile create an order directly. For all other account types, a quote is created.

### To modify an installed asset

- 1 Navigate to the Account Summary view of the account screen with the appropriate account selected.  
The Account Summary view appears.
- 2 In the Installed Asset list, select the service item you want to modify.
- 3 Click Modify.  
Siebel Configurator displays the current configuration of the item, adjusted for any open orders.
- 4 In the Configurator selection pages, modify the configuration by adding or deleting items or by changing item attribute values.
- 5 When you are finished modifying the configuration, click Done in the selection pages.  
The Quote form appears and the changes you made are shown in the Line Items list.
- 6 In the Line Items list, verify that items display correctly and have the correct action codes.  
The configuration displayed in the quote is a composite of the asset as it is currently installed and adjustments to the asset requested in open orders.
- 7 Click Profile to return to the Account Summary view.

## Ungrouping Quote Line Items (End User)

Before a quote is turned into an order, line items with a quantity of more than one are *ungrouped* to become separate instances, each with a quantity of one, if the product's Auto Explode flag is set.

Ungrouping only applies to assets for which the Auto Explode flag is set. If the end user does not ungroup them configuration, the quote-to-order process automatically ungroups them.

Ungrouping is needed to give each asset separate a Service ID, so it can be tracked and serviced in the future. It also gives each asset a separate integration ID, which is used by the back-end provisioning system for fulfillment.

The ungroup feature allows you to configure once for multiple items and then splitting them into individual items that can have their own variant configurations, telephone numbers, or Billing/Service accounts. To do this, the end user performs the following tasks:

- Adds the customizable product to a quote and specify the desired quantity.
- Starts a configuration session and choose components and attributes common to all the instances of the product. This configuration is applied to all of the items.
- Ungroups the product.
- For each instance of the product, starts a configuration session and further customizes the product. The configuration changes are applied only to the single item.

For example, the customer wants to order ten local lines, with similar configurations, except that five will have voice mail, five will have call waiting. An employee end user can start by creating one line item with the quantity two and with all the features the customer wants except voice mail and call waiting. Then, the user ungroups that item, so that there are two items. Then, the user takes one of those items, adds voice mail to it, and changes the quantity to five. Then, the user takes the other item, adds call waiting to it, and changes the quantity to five. Finally, the user ungroups both line items, so that there are ten individual line items.

### ***To ungroup quote line items***

- 1** Navigate to the Accounts screen, and in the Account list, drill down on the account name hyperlink.

The Customer Portal view appears.

- 2** In the Quotes list, drill down on the desired quote number.

The Quote view appears.

- 3** Click the Line Items view tab.

The line items in the quote display.

- 4** Select the line item you want to ungroup.

This will be a line item with multiple quantities that need to be configured differently.

- 5** Click Ungroup.

The quote ungroups the item and displays it as multiple line items, with a quantity of one for each item.

## **Editing Quote Line Items**

End users may need to edit line items when creating a new quote, or when returning to an existing quote.

Use the procedure below to do one of the following:

- Edit line item details for a simple product, for example if you want to change the attributes.
- Configure or reconfigure a customizable product in a quote an end user is creating in the Quotes screen. If a customer asset exists, Configurator selection pages display the asset adjusted for any open orders.

- Edit the configuration of a customizable product in a quote created by modifying an asset or deactivating an installed asset.

### **To edit quote line items**

- 1 Navigate to the Account Summary view of the account screen with the appropriate account selected.

The Account Summary view appears.

- 2 In the Quotes list, click on the desired Quote Number.

The Quote form appears, displaying details of the quote.

- 3 In the Line Items list, select the line item that you want to edit and change the values of the fields directly in the line item.

The action code of the line item will be changed to Update. See [Chapter 11, "Business Service Methods Reference"](#) for more information about action codes.

To retain manual discounts, click the Keep Discount check box in the Line Item Detail form.

- 4 To customize an item, select a customizable product in the Line Items list.

The Customize button becomes active.

- 5 Click Customize.

A Configurator session launches and displays selection pages, which the current configuration of the customer asset adjusted for any open orders.

- 6 Modify the configuration of the customizable product or service as needed and click Done.

The revised configuration displays in Line Items.

## **Updating an Opportunity From a Quote**

End users may need to update an opportunity with the potential revenue from a quote. This will keep managers current with the potential revenue and may impact their decisions.

### **To transfer revenue from a quote to an opportunity**

- 1 Navigate to the Quotes screen and select the desired quote.
- 2 If you want to review the opportunity, perform the following steps:
  - a In the Quote list, drill down on the name in the Opportunity column.
  - b Review the information about the opportunity, and when you are finished, return to the Quotes screen.
- 3 Click the Line Items view tab.
- 4 In the Line Items list, verify that the quote line items and prices are correct.
- 5 When you are satisfied the entries are correct, click Update Opportunity.

## Converting Quotes to Orders

After a customer agrees to the details of a quote, the employee end user can follow the procedure below to convert a quote into an order.

### ***To convert a quote to an order***

- 1 Navigate to the Account Summary view of the account screen with the appropriate account selected.

The Account Summary view appears.

- 2 In the Quotes list, drill down on the desired Quote Number.

The Quote form appears, displaying details of the quote.

- 3 Click the Orders view tab.

- 4 In the Orders list, click Sales Order.

The quote is converted to an order and appears in the Orders list.

## Editing Order Line Items

Employee end users can edit the configuration of customizable products in pending orders by use the procedure below. A customer asset does not need not be associated with the order.

If the order an end user is changing is a modification to a customer asset, all open orders are applied to the asset before it is displayed in the Configurator selection pages.

### ***To edit order line Items***

- 1 Navigate to the Account Summary view of the account screen with the appropriate account selected.

The Account Summary view appears.

- 2 In the Orders list, drill down on the desired Order #.

The Sales Order form and Line Items list appear, displaying details of the order.

- 3 In the Line Items list, select the line item you want to modify.

- 4 In the order's Status field, make sure the status is Open or Pending.

If the status is Complete, the order has been fulfilled. If the customer wants to make a change to a completed order, you must create a new order or revise an existing order. To create a new order, which you must do when modifying an installed customer asset, see ["Modifying the Service Profile" on page 144](#). To revise an existing order, see ["Revising a Submitted Order" on page 142](#).

- 5 Select the line item that you want to edit and change the values of the fields directly in the line item.

The action code of the line item will be changed to Update. For more information about action codes, see [Chapter 11, "Business Service Methods Reference."](#)

- 6 To change the configuration of an item, select the line item you want to edit and click Customize. A Configurator session launches and displays selection pages.
- 7 Modify the configuration of the product or service as needed, and click Done.

The revised configuration appears in the Line Items list. The Revision field displays the version of the order, which is incremented when the order is revised to create a supplemental order.

## Submitting an Order

Employee end users can use the following procedure to submit an order.

### ***To submit an order***

- 1 Navigate to the Account Summary view of the account screen with the appropriate account selected.

The Account Summary view appears.

- 2 In the Orders list, drill down on the desired Order #.

The Sales Order form and Line Items list appear displaying details of the order.

- 3 In the Sales Order form, click Submit.

The Status changes to Open for the order and for any line items that were previously pending.

## Revising a Submitted Order

Employee end users may need to revise an order that has been submitted. It must be revised before it can be changed and resubmitted. This is also called a **Supplemental** order. The procedure below describes how end users can do this to open orders.

### ***To revise a submitted order***

- 1 Navigate to the Account Summary view of the account screen with the appropriate account selected.

The Account Summary view appears.

- 2 In the Orders list, drill down on the desired order number of the open order.

The Sales Order form and Line Items list appear, displaying details of the order.

- 3 In the Sales Order form, click Revise.

- 4 In the Line Items list, select the line item you want to modify.
- 5 To change the configuration of a line item, select the item and click Customize.  
A Configurator session launches and displays selection pages. The selection pages display the current configuration of the customer asset adjusted for any open orders.
- 6 Modify the configuration of the customizable product or service as needed and click Done.
- 7 In the Sales Order form, click Submit.

The Status changes to Open for the order and any line items that were previously pending.

The integrator is responsible for extending the Submit Order Process workflow to do both of the following:

- Compare the before and after versions of the order.
- Interact with the service fulfillment system to cancel, update, rollback, or accelerate the order line items.

If a user changes the action codes manually in the line item, it changes the effect on the previous order as shown in the table below. For more information about action codes, see [Chapter 11, "Business Service Methods Reference."](#)

Original Action	Status	New Action	Effect
- (Dash)	All	- (Dash)	No effect
- (Dash)	All	Update	Updates service item
- (Dash)	All	Delete	Deletes service item
- (Dash)	All	Add	No effect
Add	Complete	- (Dash)	No effect
Add	Complete	Update	Updates service item
Add	Complete	Delete	Deletes service item
Add	Complete	Add	No effect
Add	Complete	- (Dash)	No effect
Add	Complete	Update	No effect
Add	Complete	Delete	No effect
Add	Complete	Add	Adds service item
Update	All	- (Dash)	No effect
Update	All	Update	Updates service item
Update	All	Delete	Deletes service item
Update	All	Add	No effect
Delete	Complete	- (Dash)	No effect
Delete	Complete	Update	No effect

Original Action	Status	New Action	Effect
Delete	Complete	Delete	No effect
Delete	Complete	Add	Adds service item with same configuration
Delete	Complete	- (Dash)	No effect
Delete	Complete	Update	Updates service item
Delete	Complete	Delete	Deletes service item
Delete	Complete	Add	No effect

## Creating a Follow-On Order

An order passes the point of no return when the company's business policies dictate that a customer is no longer allowed to change the order because it would be too expensive. For example, the service is fully installed and is now being tested.

When an order has reached the point of no return, so it is not possible to create a supplemental order, you can create a follow-on order for a customer, which allows the customer to place a new order for the same service using the original order as a starting point.

### **To create a follow-on order**

- 1 Navigate to the Orders screen.
- 2 In the Orders list, query for the order for which you want to create a follow on order.
- 3 Drill down on the Order # link to display the Order > Line Items view.
- 4 Select the line item for the service that you want to change and click Modify.
- 5 If the service is customizable, the Configurator view will be displayed. Make the changes to the service and click Done.

Depending on the type of Account (Residential or Business) either the Quote Detail view or the Order Line Items view will be displayed with the follow-on order.

## Modifying the Service Profile

Employee end users use the Account Summary to access the service profile and invoke the processes above. End users can also access an account's service profile in the Billing Item and Installed Asset views.

**NOTE:** There is an Accounts view labeled Service Profile, but it is used primarily in Field Service. It does not display the customer's service profile as it is used in asset-based ordering.

There are several ways to modify the service profile of a customer:



- Create a quote for a new item. See [“Creating a Quote” on page 136](#).
- Create a quote that modifies an existing item. See [“Creating a Quote That Modifies an Asset” on page 138](#).
- Create a quote to disconnect an item. See [“Deactivating an Installed Asset” on page 145](#).

If a quote is generated by any of these methods, the service profile will be updated when the quote and subsequent order are fulfilled. This is typically done in one of two ways:

- From an external order management system. For more information on how this is done, see [“Workflow to Apply an Order to the Service Profile” on page 156](#).
- From an external system that maintains service profiles. In this case Siebel EIM sends a replication of the customer’s profile to the Siebel application. For more information about EIM, see *Siebel Enterprise Integration Manager Administration Guide*.

Preconfigured, an Auto-Asset button can be used to update the service profile from a completed Order. However, when one of the two methods above is implemented, the integrator usually removes the Auto-Asset button. If the Auto-Asset button has not been removed, the end user can use the following procedure.

### **To modify the service profile using Auto-Asset**

- 1 Navigate to the Sales Orders view of the Orders screen.
- 2 In the Orders list, drill down on the desired order number of an order that has been submitted.
- 3 In the Line Items list, set the status of the line items to Complete.
- 4 Click Auto-Asset.
 

**NOTE:** Auto-Asset must be invoked once for each root level product in the Order.
- 5 Navigate to the Account Summary view for the Service Account associated with the line items. The completed order line items will be reflected in the service profile.

## Deactivating an Installed Asset

Employee end users can use the procedure below to create a quote that discontinues an existing customer service.

**NOTE:** When you use this procedure, the account type determines whether a quote or order is created. If the account type is *Residential*, quotes are not created and all modifications of the service profile create an order directly. For all other account types, a quote is created.

### **To deactivate a service item**

- 1 Navigate to the Account Summary view of the account screen with the appropriate account selected.

The Account Summary view appears.

- 2 In Installed Asset or Billing Items, select the service item you want to disconnect, and click Deactivate.  
The Quotes form appears. The Line Items list shows the items that will be disconnected.
- 3 Verify that the service items you want to disconnect display an action code of Delete.
- 4 Convert the quote to an order and submit it. For more information, see ["Converting Quotes to Orders" on page 141](#).

## Suspending and Resuming Service

When you create a suspend order, you stop service. The customer is still the owner of the service, but no service is being delivered. When you create a resume order, you recommence a service that has been suspended.

You may use suspend and resume orders for a number of reasons:

- Customers who are going on vacation may want to suspend their newspaper delivery service while they are away.
- A chain store may have one branch in a remote location that closes for the winter, so it wants to suspend both its phone and internet service to that site for the winter.
- A phone company may have a policy saying that, if customers have not paid their bills for three months and do not respond to calls from collection agents, the phone company suspends their service. The phone company resumes service after the bills are paid.
- Customers may report that they have lost their cell phones, and the phone company suspends service to prevent fraud. When the phones are found, the company resumes the service.

### ***To enter a suspend order***

- 1 Navigate to the Accounts view of the Accounts screen.
- 2 In the Accounts list, click the name of the customer who has the service.
- 3 Click the Installed Assets view tab.
- 4 If necessary, do a query to find the assets to be suspended.

For example, if you want to suspend service to a site, query on the Point of Service field to find all assets for that site.

- 5 In the Installed Assets list, select one or more services with the status of Active.
- 6 Click Suspend.

### ***To enter a resume order***

- 1 Navigate to the Installed Assets view.
- 2 In the Installed Assets list, select a service that has the status of Suspended.
- 3 Click Resume.

# 10 Workflows for Asset-Based Ordering

This chapter explains the Siebel workflows used for asset-based ordering.

In this chapter, the workflows are grouped in sections that correspond to the business processes that they automate. Each section describes a workflow process and may describe one or more subprocesses that are called by the main process. These are grouped together to show how the process and its subprocesses are related to each other.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- ["About Workflows for Asset-Based Ordering" on page 147](#)
- ["Workflow to Ungroup Quote Line Items" on page 148](#)
- ["Workflow to Ungroup Order Line Items" on page 148](#)
- ["Workflow to Edit Quote Line Items" on page 149](#)
- ["Workflow to Convert a Quote to an Order" on page 151](#)
- ["Workflow to Edit Order Line Items" on page 153](#)
- ["Workflow to Submit an Order" on page 155](#)
- ["Workflow to Apply an Order to the Service Profile" on page 156](#)
- ["Workflows to Modify the Service Profile" on page 158](#)
- ["Workflows to Redisplay the Service Profile" on page 160](#)
- ["Workflows to Modify a Service Item" on page 161](#)
- ["Workflows to Disconnect a Service Item" on page 167](#)
- ["Workflows to Suspend or Resume Service Items" on page 170](#)

## About Workflows for Asset-Based Ordering

Workflows are a central feature of asset-based ordering. They automate the business processes associated with managing accounts, quotes, orders, and assets.

You can modify these workflows to suit your own business model using Siebel Business Process Designer. For more information, see *Siebel Business Process Designer Administration Guide*.

Many of these processes and subprocesses use business service methods that are specific to asset-based ordering. The descriptions of workflows include tables listing the names of any methods they call. For information about these methods, see [Chapter 11, "Business Service Methods Reference."](#)

**NOTE:** Some workflows in the following sections may not be relevant to your application services.

## Workflow to Ungroup Quote Line Items

This workflow ungroups the line items in a quote so that all items have a quantity of 1. It consists of the workflow process:

- SIS OM Ungroup Quote

### SIS OM Ungroup Quote

This workflow decomposes each line item with a quantity greater than 1 into multiple line items, each with a quantity of 1. It ungroups the root product and every child product. Subsequently, a user can specify different attributes for each line item. Ungroup can act only on the root product level; it cannot ungroup individual child products without ungrouping the root and all its children. This workflow is shown in [Figure 5](#).

A user initiates this workflow by clicking the Ungroup button in the Order Entry - Line Items view (Sales).

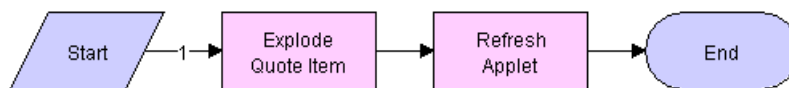


Figure 5. SIS OM Ungroup Quote Business Process

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Ungroups (explodes) the quote line items.

If the quantity of any line item is greater than 1, then the workflow creates multiple instances of the line item, each with a quantity of 1.

**NOTE:** NOTE: Items with the Auto Explode flag set to N are not exploded.

- 2 Refreshes the Quote Item list of the Order Entry - Line Items view (Sales).

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Explode Quote Line Item	Ungroup
Refresh Applet	Refresh Business Component

## Workflow to Ungroup Order Line Items

This workflow ungroups the line items in a quote so that all items have a quantity of 1. It consists of the workflow process:

- SIS OM Ungroup Order

### SIS OM Ungroup Order

This workflow decomposes each line item with a quantity greater than 1 into multiple line items, each with a quantity of 1. It ungroups the root product and every child product. Subsequently, a user can specify different attributes for each line item. Ungroup can act only on the root product level; it cannot ungroup individual child products without ungrouping the root and all its children. This workflow is shown in Figure 6.

A user initiates this workflow by clicking the Ungroup button in the Quote Detail view.

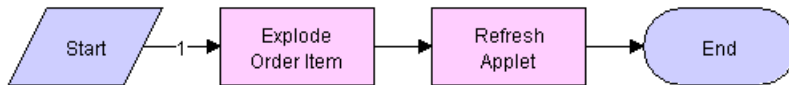


Figure 6. SIS OM Ungroup Order Business Process

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Ungroups (explodes) the order line items.

If the quantity of any line item is greater than 1, then the workflow creates multiple instances of the line item, each with a quantity of 1.

**NOTE:** Items with the Auto Explode flag set to N are not exploded.

- 2 Refreshes the Order Entry - Line Item view's Order Item list.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Explode Order Line Item	Ungroup
Refresh Applet	Refresh Business Component

## Workflow to Edit Quote Line Items

This workflow allows a user to edit the line items of quotes that result from creating or modifying service items. It consists of the workflow process:

- SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item

### SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item

This workflow applies active and unprocessed orders to the asset associated with the selected line item and displays the asset in the Product Configurator view. The user makes changes to define the newly requested state and clicks the Done button. The workflow writes the delta of the current and requested states of the asset to the current quote as 1 or more line items. This workflow is shown in Figure 7.

A user initiates this workflow by clicking Customize in the Quote Detail view.

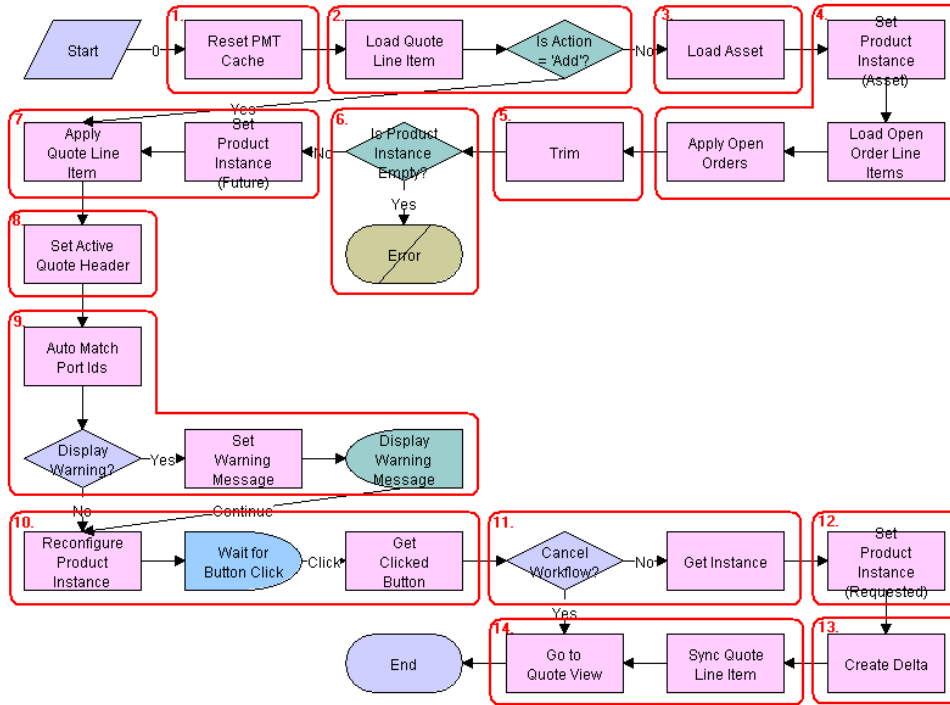


Figure 7. SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Clears business service cache of existing product instances.
- 2 Checks the action code of the top-level component of the order line item. If the action code is Add, then goes to Step 7.
- 3 If the action code is not Add, reads the asset associated with the selected quote line item from the database. Components with a status of Inactive are excluded.
- 4 Retrieves all prior active and unprocessed orders that relate to the asset and applies them to generate the requested future state of the asset.
- 5 Removes all asset components that do not have the 'Track As Asset' flag set.
- 6 If one of the active and unprocessed orders disconnects the top-level component, or there are asset components with the 'Track As Asset' flag set, the resulting asset is empty. The workflow displays the following error message: A request has already been made to disconnect this service item. The workflow stops.
- 7 Applies the current quote line item to the asset.
- 8 Stores the quote header so that line items can be added to it.
- 9 Self-heals the asset such that the asset structure matches the product definition. If any changes are made to the asset, a warning message appears.

- 10 Displays the currently requested state of the asset in the Product Configurator view. The user makes the required changes and clicks the Done or Cancel button.
- 11 If the user clicks the Cancel button, the workflow is terminated. If the user clicks the Done button, the newly requested state is retrieved from the Configurator.
- 12 If the action code of the root item is not Add, caches the previously requested state of the asset to be used as an input to Delta.
- 13 Generates the delta of the following as 1 or more quote line items:
  - The requested state of the asset before the current order line item was applied.
  - The state of the asset after the user has reconfigured it.
- 14 Writes the quote line item to the database and refreshes the view.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Reset PMT Cache	Reset
Set Product Instance (Asset)	Set Product Instance
Load Open Order Line Items	Find Orders
Apply Open Orders	Apply
Trim	Trim
Set Product Instance (Future)	Set Product Instance
Apply Changes Quote Line Item	Apply
Set Active Quote Header	Set Output Header
Auto Match Port Ids	AutoMatch
Reconfigure Product Instance	Reconfigure Product Instance
Get Clicked Button	Get Configure Button Click Information
Get Instance	Get Product Instance
Set Product Instance (Requested)	Set Product Instance
Create Delta	Delta
Sync Quote Line Item	Synchronize
Go To Quote View	GotoView

## Workflow to Convert a Quote to an Order

This workflow allows a user to convert a sales quote to a sales order. It consists of the workflow process:

- SIS OM Quote To Order Workflow

### SIS OM Quote To Order PMT Version

This workflow creates an order that is associated with the current quote. It copies the line items from the quote to the order and sets the quote’s status to Order Placed. This workflow is shown in Figure 8.

A user initiates this workflow by choosing the Sales Order button or menu option in the Quote Orders view.

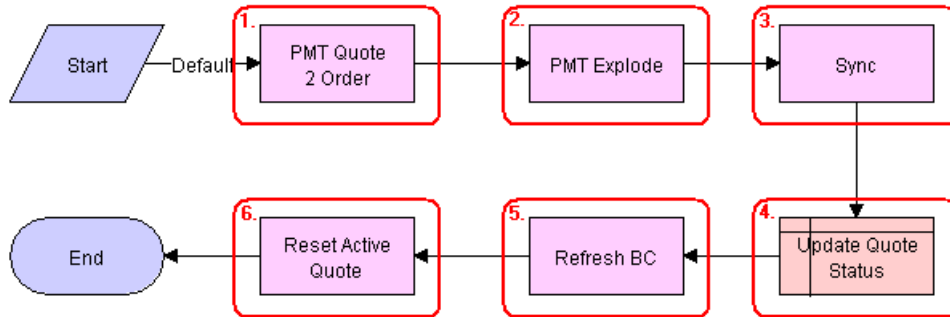


Figure 8. SIS OM Quote To Order Workflow PMT Version

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Converts a quote to an order. The new order has all the line items and attributes of the quote.
- 2 Explodes line items with a quantity greater than 1 into multiple copies of the line item, each with quantity 1.
- 3 Writes the order to the database.
- 4 Set the status of the quote to Order Placed.
- 5 Refreshes the Quote Orders View.
- 6 Resets the Active Quote so that the current quote is no longer the active quote.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
PMT Quote 2 Order	Convert Product Instance
PMT Explode	Explode
Sync	Synchronize
Refresh BC	Refresh Business Component
Reset Active Quote	Set Profile Attribute



# Workflow to Edit Order Line Items

This workflow allows a user to edit order line items. It consists of the workflow process:

- SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item

## SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item

This workflow applies active and unprocessed orders to the asset associated with the selected line item and displays the asset in the Product Configurator view. The user makes changes to define the newly requested state and clicks the Done button. The workflow then writes the delta of the current and requested states of the asset to the current order as 1 or more line items. This workflow is shown in Figure 9.

A user initiates this workflow by clicking the Customize button in the Order Detail view.

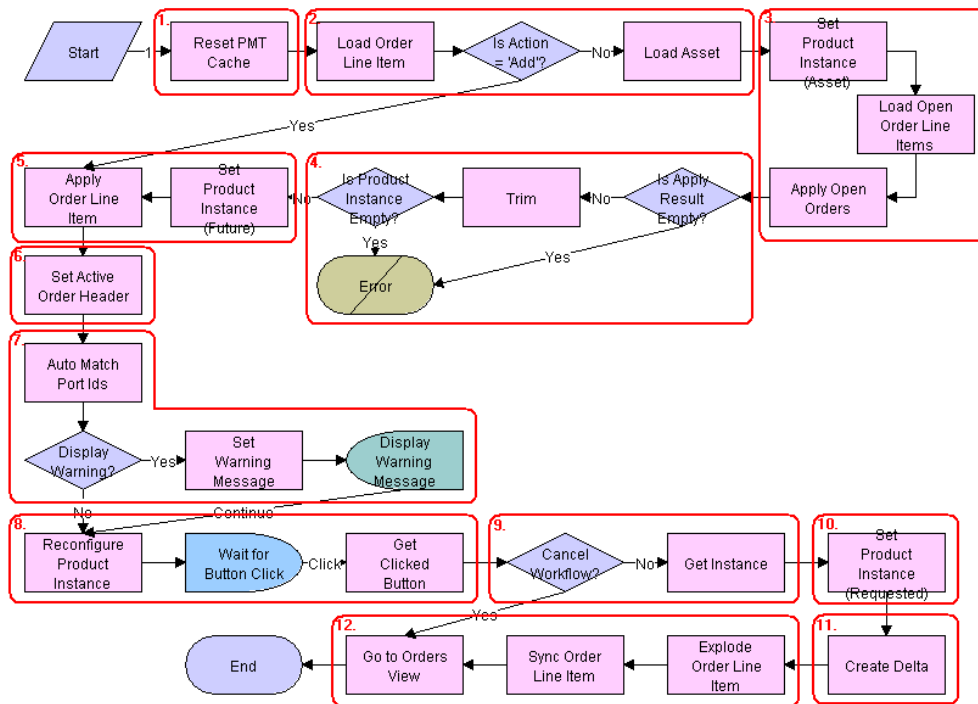


Figure 9. SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Clears the business service cache of existing product instances.
- 2 Loads the asset associated with the current order line item, if it exists. Checks the action code of the top-level component of the order line item. If the action code is New, then go to Step 5.
- 3 Retrieves all prior active and unprocessed orders related to the asset and applies them to generate the requested future state of the asset.

- 4 Removes the asset components that do not have the 'Track As Asset' flag set. If none of the components has the 'Track As Asset' flag set or one of the active and unprocessed orders disconnects the top-level component, the resulting asset is empty. The workflow displays the following error message: A request has already been made to disconnect this service item. The workflow stops.
- 5 Applies the current order line item to the asset.
- 6 Stores the order header so that line items can be added to it.
- 7 Self-heals the asset such that the asset structure matches the product definition. If any changes are made to the asset, a warning message is displayed.
- 8 Displays the currently requested state of the asset in the Product Configurator view. The user makes the required changes and clicks the Done or Cancel button.
- 9 If the user clicks the Cancel button the workflow is terminated. If the user clicks the Done button, the newly requested state is retrieved from the Configurator.
- 10 Caches the newly requested state of the asset to be used as an input to Delta.
- 11 Generates the delta of the following as one or more order line items:
  - The requested state of the asset before the current order line item was applied.
  - The state of the asset after the user has reconfigured it.
- 12 Explodes (ungroups) any order line item that has a quantity of more than 1 into multiple line items, each with a quantity of 1. Writes the order line item to the database and refreshes the view.

**NOTE:** This step does not control the quantity of the line items, but only works with the quantity it has been given. The user specifies order line item quantities in Configurator.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Reset PMT Cache	Reset
Set Product Instance (Asset)	Set Product Instance
Load Open Order Line Items	Find Orders
Apply Open Orders	Apply
Trim	Trim
Set Product Instance (Future)	Set Product Instance
Apply Order Line Item	Apply
Set Active Order Header	Set Output Header
Auto Match Port Ids	AutoMatch
Reconfigure Product Instance	Reconfigure Product Instance
Get Clicked Button	Get Configure Button Click Information

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Get Instance	Get Product Instance
Set Product Instance (Requested)	Set Product Instance
Create Delta	Delta
Explode Order Line Items	Explode
Sync Order Line Items	Synchronize
Go to Orders View	GotoView

## Workflow to Submit an Order

This workflow allows a user to submit an order, which signals the provisioning system that the order is ready to be provisioned. It consists of the workflow process:

### ■ SIS OM Submit Order Process

#### SIS OM Submit Order Process

This workflow checks that account information exists. It sets the status of the order and the line items to Open. Because only orders that do not have a status of Open can be submitted, this prevents the order from being submitted again. This workflow is shown in [Figure 10](#).

A user initiates this workflow by clicking the Submit button on the order header form in the Order Entry views.

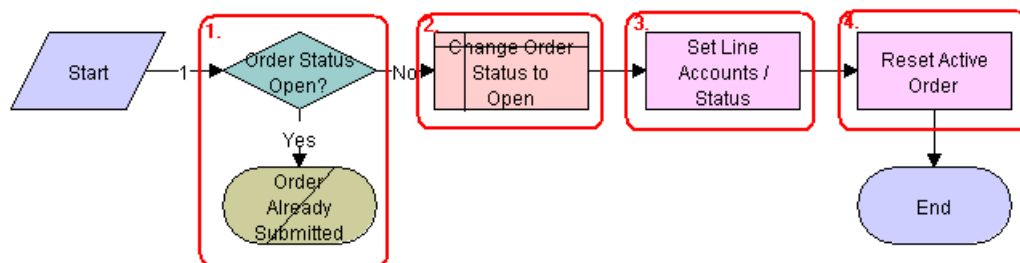


Figure 10. SIS OM Submit Order Process Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Checks that the order status is not Open.
- 2 If the order has a status of Open, it cannot be submitted, because it has already been submitted.
- 3 Sets the status of the order to Open.
- 4 Sets the status of each Pending line item to Open.
- 5 Resets the Active Order such that the current order is no longer the active order.

## SIS OM Auto Select Order Billing and Service Accounts

This workflow used to be called by an earlier version of "SIS OM Submit Order Process." It is now obsolete, but it has been retained for backward compatibility.

# Workflow to Apply an Order to the Service Profile

This workflow applies a completed order line item to the current account's service profile. It consists of the workflow process:

- SIS OM Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile

## SIS OM Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile

This workflow creates assets from completed order line items or modifies a current asset. It therefore maintains the account's service profile, which consists of its associated assets. If there are multiple accounts in an account hierarchy, service items are applied to the service account. This workflow is shown in Figure 11 on page 156.

**NOTE:** You must develop an order synchronization workflow that updates the status of order line items in your Siebel application when your company's external order management system completes all or part of an order. After it updates all the order items, the order synchronization workflow must call this workflow to apply the completed changes to the customer's service profile, which is stored as a series of assets. You can disable this workflow if an external system maintains service profiles.

By default, a user initiates this workflow by clicking the Auto-Asset button in the Order Entry - Order Line Items view.

**NOTE:** The Auto-Asset button is designed for testing and demonstration purposes, not for actual end use. It is recommended that you configure your Siebel application to call this workflow as a subprocess of the order synchronization workflow mentioned previously.

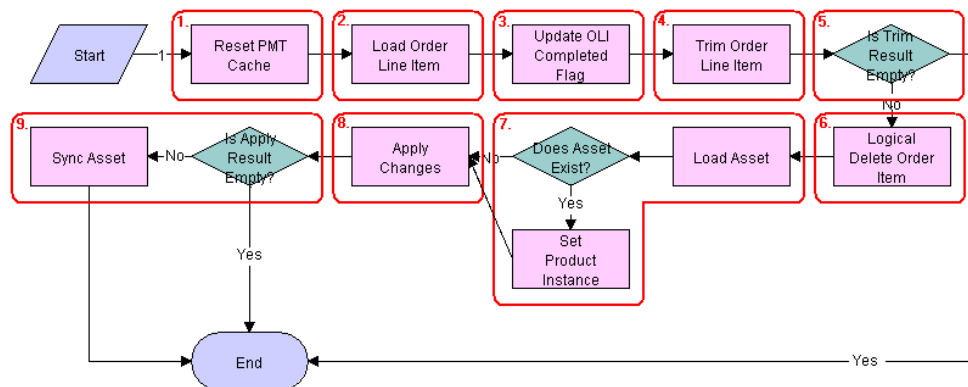


Figure 11. SIS OM Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Clears business service cache of existing product instances.
- 2 Loads the selected order line item from the database.
- 3 Updates the Order Item Processed flag.

The workflow updates the Order Item Processed flag of the topmost order line item. The workflow sets this flag to Y if all line items have a status of Complete, Failed, or -. Other workflows use this flag to determine whether a line item remains Open and should be applied to the current service profile to generate a requested future state.

- 4 Applies the Trim method.

Trim eliminates any incomplete or failed changes from the order line item. It eliminates line items whose products are not tracked as assets, line items whose status is not Complete, and line items whose action code is Existing. This causes the service profile to reflect the true state of the assets.

- 5 Checks whether line items exist.

If Trim has eliminated all line items, the workflow stops. Otherwise, the workflow continues.

- 6 Converts Delete actions into Modified actions.

The Logical Delete step converts Delete actions into Modified actions and sets the status to Inactive. This step supports the maintenance of a history of disconnected services.

- 7 Loads the service profile from the database.

If the order line item is a change to an existing item, the workflow loads the corresponding service profile, or asset, from the database.

- 8 Applies the order line item to the asset.

If the asset does not already exist, the workflow creates a new asset.

- 9 Checks whether the asset is empty.

If, as a result of applying the changes, the asset is empty, the workflow stops. Otherwise, the workflow writes the asset to the database.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Reset PMT Cache	Reset
Update OLI Completed Flag	Update Order Line Item Completed Flag
Trim Order Line Item	Trim
Logical Delete Order Line Item	Logical Delete
Apply Changes	Apply

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Set Product Instance	Set Product Instance
Sync Asset	Synchronize

## Workflows to Modify the Service Profile

This group of workflows allows a user to modify a service profile by requesting new service items. It consists of the workflow process and nested subprocesses:

- SIS OM New Products & Services Process
- SIS OM New Products & Services Process - VORD
  - SIS OM Active Quote Sub-process
  - SIS OM Active Order Sub-process

### SIS OM New Products & Services Process

This workflow displays the active document, if there is one, or a newly created document in the Quote Detail or Order Entry - Line Items view. The user can then add line items, add or delete an asset, or change the attributes of the asset. This workflow is shown in [Figure 12 on page 158](#).

A user initiates this workflow by clicking the New button in the Account screen’s Service Items view, Billing Items view, or Customer Portal view. This workflow is also initiated as a subprocess of the SIS OM New Products & Services Process - VORD.

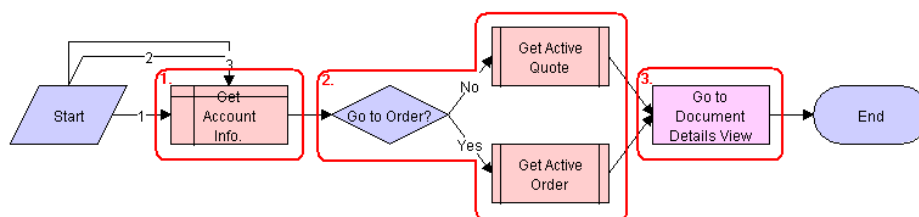


Figure 12. SIS OM New Products & Services Process Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Gets the account information.

- 2 If the account is of type 'Residential', the workflow retrieves the active order. Otherwise it retrieves the active quote.

The workflow retrieves the active document (quote or order) from the session. If there is no active document, a new document is created and set as the active document. If there is an active document, the subprocess checks that the document is associated with the same customer account as the asset being modified, and that the document has the correct status. See “SIS OM Active Quote Sub-Process” on page 163 and “SIS OM Active Order Sub-Process” on page 164. If the quote does not meet these criteria, the workflow creates a new document and sets it as the active document.

- 3 Displays the document in the Quote Details or Order Entry - Line items view, as appropriate.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the step in this workflow that calls business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Go to Document Details View	GotoView

### SIS OM New Products & Services Process - VORD

This workflow displays the active document, if there is one, or a newly created document in the Quote Detail or Order Entry - Line Items view. The user can then add line items, add or delete an asset, or change the attributes of the asset. This workflow is shown in Figure 13 on page 159.

A user initiates this workflow by clicking the New button in the Networks screen's Nodes, Connections or All Elements view.

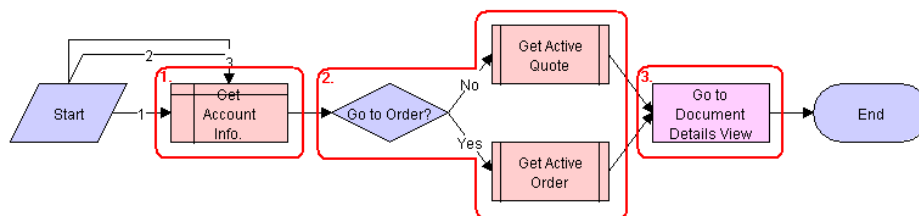


Figure 13. SIS OM New Products & Services Process - VORD Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- Gets the account information associated with the current network and initiates the SIS OM New Products & Services workflow to display the active document.

# Workflows to Redisplay the Service Profile

- There are a number of workflows that navigate to the current account's service profile (Service Items, Billing Items or Customer Portal view), which displays only the account's active assets. They are:
  - SIS OM Profile Process
  - SIS OM Go to Products and Services Sub-process

## SIS OM Profile Process

This workflow makes the current quote the active quote. It then displays the Billing Items or Service Items view for the account associated with the current quote. This workflow is shown in [Figure 14](#).

A user initiates this workflow by clicking the Profile button in the Quote Details view.

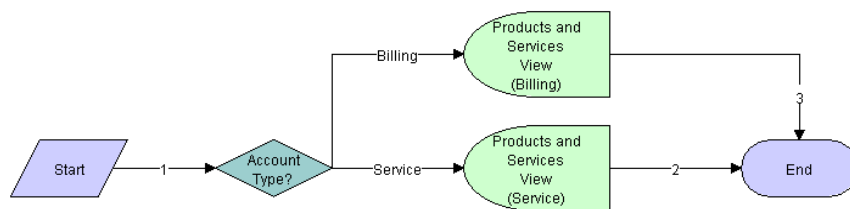


Figure 14. SIS OM Go to Products and Services Sub-Process Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Displays an error message and stops if the quote header does not specify an account.
- 2 Sets the current quote as the active quote.
- 3 Displays the Service Items or Billing Items view, depending on the type of account.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Reset Active Quote	Set Profile Attribute
Set Active Quote	Set Profile Attribute
Go to Account Profile View	GotoView

## SIS OM Go to Products and Services Sub-Process

Displays the Billing Items or Service Items view, depending on the type of account associated with the current quote. This workflow is shown in [Figure 15](#).



The CUT Order Profile Process initiates this workflow.

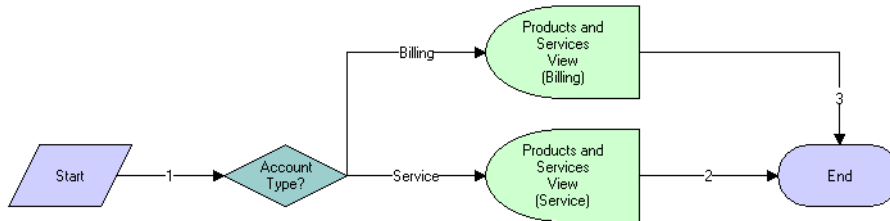


Figure 15. SIS OM Go to Products and Services Sub-Process Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- If the account is a billing account, displays the Billing Items view.
- If the account is not a billing account, displays the Service Items view.

## Workflows to Modify a Service Item

This group of workflows allows a user to modify a service item. It consists of the workflow process and nested subprocesses:

- SIS OM Modify Products & Services Process
  - SIS OM Active Quote Sub-Process
  - SIS OM Active Order Sub-Process
  - SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow

### SIS OM Modify Products & Services Process

This workflow determines whether there is an active quote for the current account. If there is no active quote, it creates a new quote. It generates a quote line item to update the selected asset. If the product is a customizable product, the workflow displays the service item in Configurator with all related open orders applied to it. Otherwise, it displays the Quote Detail view. This workflow is shown in [Figure 16 on page 162](#).

A user initiates this workflow by clicking the Modify button in the following views:

- Accounts > Service Items view
- Accounts > Customer Portal view

■ Orders > Order Entry - Line Items view

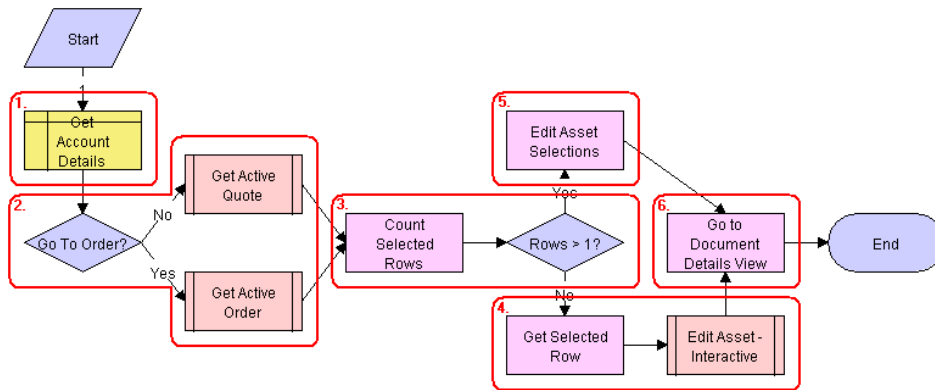


Figure 16. SIS OM Modify Products & Services Process Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Gets the details of the current account.
- 2 Retrieves the active document (quote or order) for the session.  
If the account is of type 'Residential' the active order is retrieved. Otherwise the active quote is retrieved. See SIS OM Active Quote Sub-process and SIS OM Active Order Sub-process.
- 3 Gets the number of assets that the user has selected to modify.
- 4 If the user has selected only one asset, the currently requested state of the asset is retrieved and displayed in the Product Configurator view. See SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow.
- 5 If the user has selected more than one asset, the currently requested state of each asset is retrieved and added to the active document. See SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow.
- 6 Displays active document.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Count Selected Rows	Get Selected Row Count
Get Selected Row	Get First Selected Row Value
Edit Asset Selections	Iterate Process For Selected Rows
Go to Document Details View	GotoView

### SIS OM Active Quote Sub-Process

This workflow determines whether the user has an active quote for the current account. The workflow has two process properties that are set by the calling workflow: the Row ID of the customer account associated with the asset and the Row ID of the active quote. This workflow is shown in Figure 17.

The following workflows initiate this workflow as a subprocess:

- SIS OM New Products & Services Process
- SIS OM New Products & Services Process - VORD
- SIS OM Modify Products & Services Process
- SIS OM Disconnect Products & Services Process
- SIS OM Suspend / Resume Products & Services Process

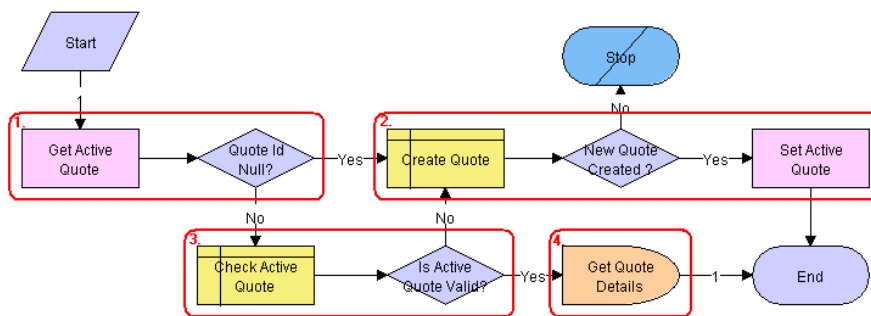


Figure 17. SIS OM Active Quote Sub-Process Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Retrieves the active quote for the session and checks that there is a value.
- 2 If there is no active quote, a new quote is created and set as the active quote.
- 3 If there is an active quote, determines whether the quote is associated with the same customer account as the asset being modified, and whether the quote has a status of In Progress. If the quote is not valid, a new quote is created and set as the active quote.
- 4 If the new quote is valid, retrieves the price list Id and the currency code associated with the quote and returns them to the calling workflow.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Count Selected Rows	Get Selected Row Count
Get Selected Row	Get First Selected Row Value

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Get Active Quote	Get Profile Attribute
Set Active Quote	Set Profile Attribute

### SIS OM Active Order Sub-Process

This workflow determines whether the user has an active order for the current account. The workflow has two process properties that are set by the calling workflow: the Row ID of the customer account associated with the asset and the Row ID of the active order. This workflow is shown in Figure 18.

The following workflows initiate this workflow as a subprocess:

- SIS OM New Products & Services Process
- SIS OM New Products & Services Process - VORD
- SIS OM Modify Products & Services Process
- SIS OM Disconnect Products & Services Process
- SIS OM Suspend / Resume Products & Services Process

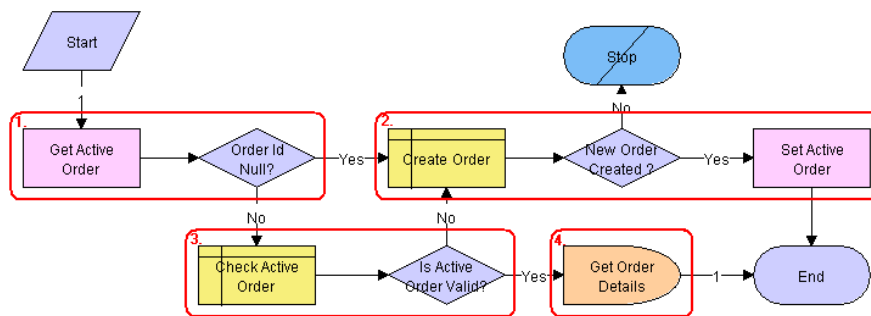


Figure 18. SIS OM Active Order Sub-Process Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Retrieves the active order for the session and checks that there is a value.
- 2 If there is no active order, a new order is created and set as the active order.
- 3 If there is an active order, determines whether the order is associated with the same customer account as the asset being modified, and whether the quote has a status of Open. If the quote is not valid, a new order is created and set as the active order.
- 4 If the new order is valid, retrieves the price list Id and the currency code associated with the order and returns them to the calling workflow.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Get Active Quote	Get Profile Attribute
Set Active Quote	Set Profile Attribute

### SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow

This workflow applies the open and pending orders related to the selected asset and displays the requested state in the Product Configurator view. After the user makes the changes that specify the newly requested state, the workflow writes the delta of the two requested states as quote line items and adds them to the active quote. This workflow is shown in Figure 19.

The SIS OM Modify Products & Services Process initiates this workflow.

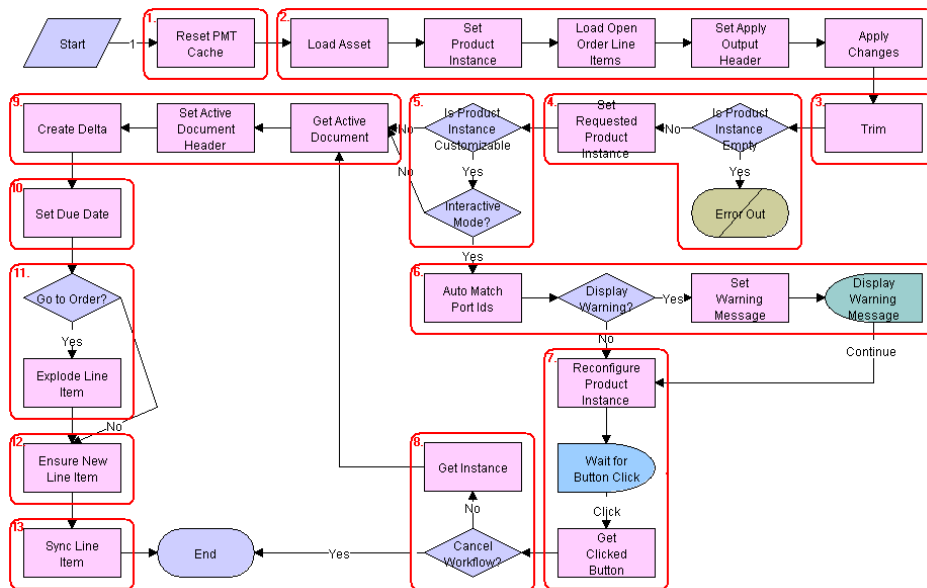


Figure 19. SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Clears the business service cache of existing product instances.
- 2 Reads the asset from the database.

Only components that do not have a status of Inactive are included. The changes specified by all the open and pending orders related to the asset are applied to it to re-create the state of the service product as the customer has requested.

- 3 Removes components from the asset that do not have the 'Track As Asset' flag set.

- 4 Determines whether an open or pending order disconnects the root component. If one of the open or pending orders disconnects the root component, or there are no components of the asset with the 'Track As Asset' flag set, then the workflow returns an empty asset and displays an error message.
- 5 Tests for a customizable asset and interactive mode.  
If the asset is customizable and the workflow is in interactive mode, the asset is displayed in the Product Configurator view, where the user can make changes to it. If the asset is not customizable or the workflow is not in interactive mode, it goes directly to Step 9.
- 6 Self-heals the asset such that the asset structure matches the product definition. If any changes are made to the asset, a warning message appears.
- 7 The future requested state of the asset is displayed in the Configurator view.
- 8 If the user clicks the Cancel button, the workflow is terminated. If the user clicks the Done button, the newly requested state is retrieved from the Configurator.
- 9 The workflow retrieves the active document. The delta of the previously requested state of the asset and the newly requested state of the asset are added as line items.
- 10 Sets the due date for all the line items.
- 11 If the active document is an order, the line items with a quantity greater than 1 are exploded into multiple copies of the line item, each with quantity 1.
- 12 Generates a unique asset integration Id for all line items with an action code of Add.
- 13 Saves the document to the database.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Reset PMT Cache	Reset
Set Product Instance	Set Product Instance
Load Open Order Line Items	Find Orders
Set Apply Output Header	Set Output Header
Apply Changes	Apply
Trim	Trim
Set Requested Product Instance	Set Product Instance
Auto Match Port Ids	AutoMatch
Reconfigure Product Instance	Reconfigure Product Instance
Get Clicked Button	Get Cfg Button Click Information
Get Instance	Get Product Instance
Set Active Document Header	Set Output Header
Create Delta	Delta

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Set Due Date	Set Field Value
Explode Line Item	Explode
Ensure New Line Item	Set Field Value
Sync Line Item	Synchronize

## Workflows to Disconnect a Service Item

This group of workflows allows a user to disconnect a service. It consists of the workflow process and nested subprocesses:

- SIS OM Disconnect Products & Services Process
  - SIS OM Active Quote Subprocess
  - SIS OM Active Order Subprocess
  - SIS OM Disconnect Asset Subprocess

### SIS OM Disconnect Products & Services Process

This workflow identifies an active document (quote or order) for the current account. Then it generates a line item to disconnect the selected asset and displays the document detail view. This workflow is shown in [Figure 20](#).

A user initiates this workflow by clicking the Disconnect button in the following views:

- Accounts > Service Items view
- Accounts > Customer Portal view

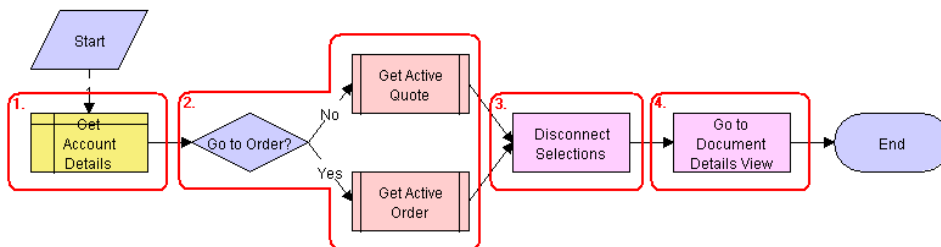


Figure 20. SIS OM Disconnect Products & Services Process Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Gets the details of the current account.

- Retrieves the active document (quote or order) for the session.

If the account is of type 'Residential', the active order is retrieved. Otherwise, the active quote is retrieved. See SIS OM Active Quote Sub-process and SIS OM Active Order Sub-process.

- Allows the user to disconnect the asset.

The workflow gets the asset's current state and then creates quote line items to disconnect the asset in that state. See 'SIS OM Disconnect Asset Sub-process'.

**NOTE:** When deleting a network node, the process will automatically delete all associated network connections. If this is not desirable behavior, change the value of the "Delete Connection" argument to 'N'

- Displays active document.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Disconnect Selections	Iterate Process For Selected Rows
Go to Document Details View	GotoView

### SIS OM Disconnect Asset Sub-process

This workflow applies the open and pending orders related to the selected asset to get its requested state. Then it creates quote line items to disconnect the selected asset in that state. It adds these line items to the active quote. This workflow is shown in Figure 21.

The SIS OM Disconnect Products & Services Process initiates this workflow.

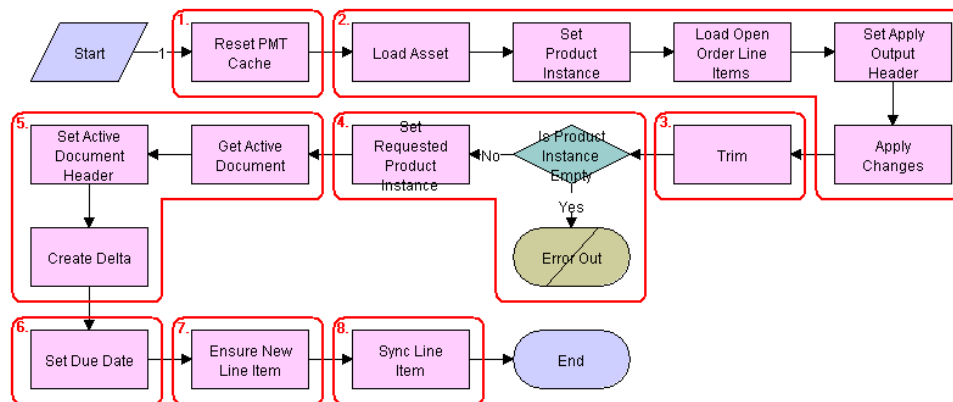


Figure 21. SIS OM Disconnect Asset Sub-process Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- Clears the business service cache of existing product instances.



- 2 Reads the asset from the database.

The workflow includes only components that do not have a status of Inactive. The workflow looks for all the orders with a status of Open or Pending that are related to the selected asset. The workflow applies the changes specified by those orders. This re-creates the state of the service product as the user has requested it.

- 3 Removes any components from the asset that do not have the 'Track As Asset' flag set.

- 4 Displays an error message if the asset is empty.

If one of the open or pending orders disconnects the root component, or there are no components that have the 'Track As Asset' flag set, the result is an empty asset. In this case, the workflow displays an error message.

- 5 Retrieves the active document. The workflow generates the delta of the requested state of the asset and the future empty state of the asset. This creates line items to disconnect the asset. The workflow adds these line items to the active document.

- 6 Sets the due date for the line items.

- 7 Generates a new asset integration ID for any line item with an action code of Add.

- 8 Saves the document to the database.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Reset PMT Cache	Reset
Set Product Instance	Set Product Instance
Load Open Order Line Items	Find Orders
Set Apply Output Header	Set Output Header
Apply Changes	Apply
Trim	Trim
Set Requested Product Instance	Set Product Instance
Set Active Document Header	Set Output Header
Create Delta	Delta
Set Due Date	Set Field Value
Ensure New Line Item	Set Field Value
Sync Line Item	Synchronize

# Workflows to Suspend or Resume Service Items

This group of workflows allows a user to suspend or resume a service. It consists of the workflow process and nested subprocesses:

- SIS OM Suspend / Resume Products & Services Process
  - SIS OM Active Quote Sub-process
  - SIS OM Active Order Sub-process
  - SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process

## SIS OM Suspend / Resume Products & Services Process

This workflow identifies an active document for the current account. Then it generates a line item to suspend or resume the selected asset and displays the document detail view. This workflow is shown in [Figure 22](#).

A user initiates this workflow by clicking the Suspend or Resume button in the following views:

- Accounts > Service Items view
- Accounts > Customer Portal view

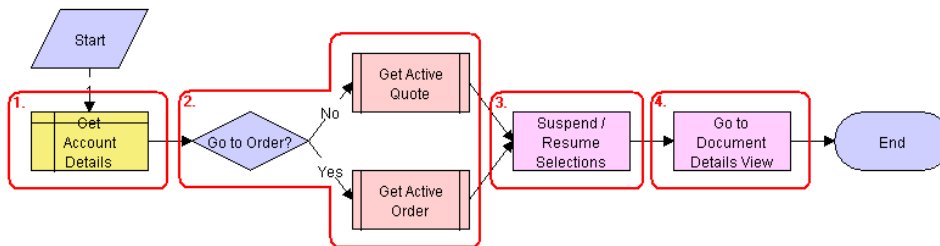


Figure 22. SIS OM Suspend / Resume Products & Services Process Workflow

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Gets the details of the current account.
- 2 Retrieves the active document (quote or order) for the session.  
 If the account is of type 'Residential', the active order is retrieved. Otherwise, the active quote is retrieved. See SIS OM Active Quote Sub-process and SIS OM Active Order Sub-process.
- 3 Allows the user to suspend or resume the asset.  
 The workflow gets the asset's current state and then creates quote line items to suspend or resume the asset in that state. See 'SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process'.
- 4 Displays active document.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Suspend / Resume Selections	Iterate Process For Selected Rows
Go to Document Details View	GotoView

### SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process

This workflow applies the open and pending orders related to the selected asset to get its requested state. Then it creates line items to suspend or resume the selected asset in that state. It adds these line items to the active document. This workflow is shown in Figure 23.

The SIS OM Suspend / Resume Products & Services Process initiates this workflow.

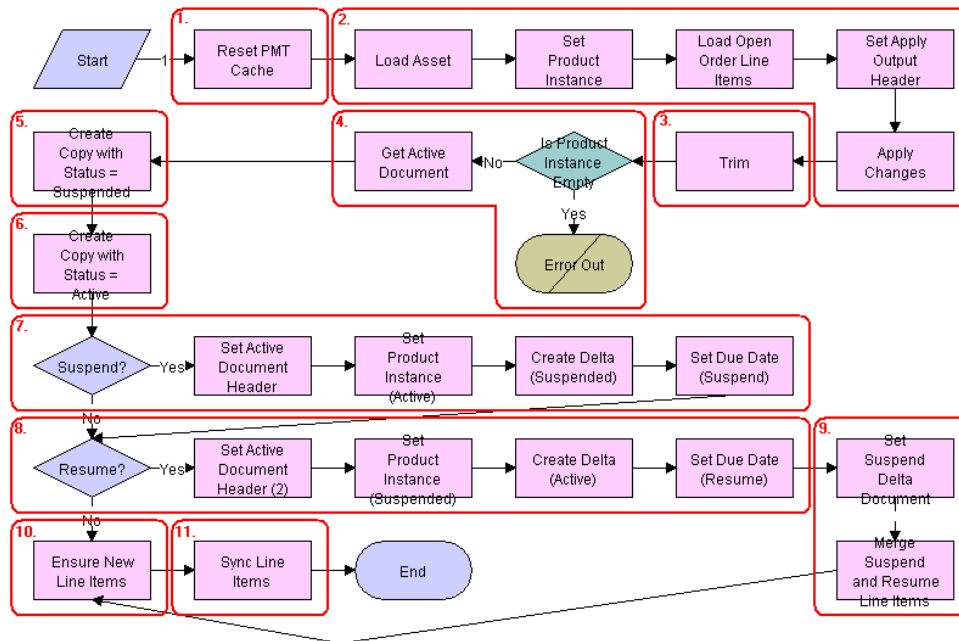


Figure 23. SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process

**Workflow Description.** This workflow does the following:

- 1 Clears the business service cache of existing product instances.
- 2 Reads the asset from the database.

The workflow includes only components that do not have a status of Inactive. The workflow looks for all the orders with a status of Open or Pending that are related to the selected asset. The workflow applies the changes specified by those orders. This re-creates the state of the service product as the user has requested it.

- 3 Removes any components from the asset that do not have the 'Track As Asset' flag set.
- 4 Displays an error message if the asset is empty.  
If one of the open or pending orders disconnects the root component, or there are no components that have the 'Track As Asset' flag set, the result is an empty asset. In this case, the workflow displays an error message.
- 5 Copies the asset and sets the status of each component to 'Suspended'.
- 6 Copies the asset and sets the status of each component to 'Active'.
- 7 If the Suspend button was clicked, the workflow generates the delta of the requested state of the asset and the future suspended state of the asset. This creates line items to suspend the asset. Sets the due date for each line item.
- 8 If the resume button was clicked, the workflow generates the delta of the requested state of the asset and the future active state of the asset. This creates line items to resume the asset, and it sets the due date for each line item.
- 9 Merges the line items of the suspend and resume requests into a single document.
- 10 Generates a new asset integration Id for any line item with an action code of Add.
- 11 Saves the document to the database.

**Associated Business Service Methods.** The following table shows the steps in this workflow that call business service methods.

Workflow Step	Business Service Method Called
Reset PMT Cache	Reset
Set Product Instance	Set Product Instance
Load Open Order Line Items	Find Orders
Set Apply Output Header	Set Output Header
Apply Changes	Apply
Trim	Trim
Create Copy with Status = Suspended	Set Field Value
Create Copy with Status = Active	Set Field Value
Set Active Document Header	Set Output Header
Set Requested Product Instance (Active)	Set Product Instance
Create Delta (Suspended)	Delta
Set Due Date (Suspend)	Set Field Value
Set Active Document Header (2)	Set Output Header
Set Requested Product Instance (Suspended)	Set Product Instance
Create Delta (Active)	Delta

<b>Workflow Step</b>	<b>Business Service Method Called</b>
Set Due Date (Resume)	Set Field Value
Set Suspend Delta Document	Set Product Instance
Merge Suspend and Resume Line Items	Merge
Ensure New Line Item	Set Field Value
Sync Line Item	Synchronize



# 11 Business Service Methods Reference

This chapter is a reference that explains the methods developed for the business services used for order management. It includes the following sections:

- ["About Business Services for Order Management" on page 175](#)
- ["Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods" on page 175](#)
- ["Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods" on page 236](#)

## About Business Services for Order Management

Generally, a business service:

- Defines reusable business logic that can be executed within the Object Manager
- Can be a built-in service that is defined in Siebel Tools or a run-time service that is defined in the Siebel client application by administrators
- Can be based on the CSSService Class (standard business service) or on specialized classes (specialized business service)  
**NOTE:** Specialized business services are used only by internal Siebel Engineering personnel. Customers should not use specialized business services unless their behavior is specifically documented.
- Can be configured by properties or scripts (written in Siebel VB or Siebel eScript)
- Can be used for generic code libraries that are called from other scripts
- Are used as building blocks in the Siebel Application Integration framework
- Can be referred to by commands associated with a menu item or toolbar button

## Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods

The Product Manipulation Toolkit (PMT) business service is a set of methods that can be linked to implement order processing workflows. These workflows maintain the service profile as orders are provisioned.

The two primary methods in this toolkit are:

- **Delta.** Creates a Quote or Order that defines the changes required to convert the initial state of an Asset into the final state of an Asset.

- **Apply.** Applies changes defined in Quotes and Orders to an Asset, putting the Asset into a new state.

The toolkit also provides a number of methods to support Delta and Apply.

This section begins with a description of “[User Properties used by PMT Methods](#)” on page 179.

Then this section describes all the methods that the PMT business service calls, which are summarized in [Table 15](#).

Table 15. PMT Methods

Method	Comment
<a href="#">Delta Method on page 181</a>	Generates the actions necessary to change an existing customizable product (asset) into a new customizable product. The set of actions can be written to a quote or an order.
<a href="#">Apply Method on page 192</a>	Applies changes defined by a Sales order line item to a customizable asset.
<a href="#">Trim Method on page 203</a>	Eliminates line items from a delta quote or delta order if they do not meet the requirements specified in the input arguments. This action produces a new trimmed quote or order. The method determines which changes in a customizable order item to apply to the service profile stored in Assets.
<a href="#">Explode Method on page 206</a>	Creates multiple instances of a product. The number of instances is determined by the value of the field defined by the ExplodeOnField argument. For each new instance, the value of ExplodeOnField is set to 1. An existing instance is considered for explosion only if it meets the conditions specified by ConditionFieldNames and ConditionValues.
<a href="#">Explode Siebel Object Method on page 209</a>	Functions like Explode except that it also loads the SiebelMessage integration object from the Siebel database with a specified business component and synchronizes it back to the database after the explosion.
<a href="#">Find Orders Method on page 210</a>	Given the asset integration Id of a root line item, this method finds all instances of order items that have the same asset integration Id. The order header, matching line item, its child items and attributes are returned as part of the output. Other lines item in the same order header with a different integration Ids are not returned.
<a href="#">Logical Delete Method on page 211</a>	Converts any item of a product instance that has a Deleted action code to an Update action code and an Inactive status. Logical Delete only works with a product instance of the Order type. In other words, the Integration Object passed in the Siebel Message is based on the Order Entry business object.
<a href="#">Assign New Service IDs Method on page 212</a>	Assigns a service point Id, associated with a specified premise, to each item of the input complex object where the service point type matches the service type of the product.



Table 15. PMT Methods

Method	Comment
<a href="#">Convert Product Instance Method on page 213</a>	Converts a product instance of one type to another; for example, quote to order.
<a href="#">Get Instance Method on page 214</a>	Gets a complex product instance from the Product Configurator.
<a href="#">Get Profile Attribute Method on page 215</a>	Returns the value of the specified attribute of the user profile.
<a href="#">Is Fully Exploded Method on page 215</a>	Checks a product instance to determine if an explode operation is required, based upon the value specified by ExplodeOnField. If the field value is greater than 1 for any component of the product instance, the method returns N. Otherwise, the method returns Y.
<a href="#">Is Module Licensed Method on page 216</a>	Determines whether or not the specified module is licensed.
<a href="#">Merge Method on page 217</a>	Merges the components of one integration object (product instance) under the header of another integration object.
<a href="#">Quote To Revenue Method on page 217</a>	Generates revenue line items for each line item in a quote that matches the criteria specified by the input conditions. The line items are associated with the opportunity from which the quote was created.
<a href="#">Reconfigure Product Instance Method on page 221</a>	Displays the asset that was passed to the Product Configurator as input, in the Configurator UI.
<a href="#">Reset Method on page 223</a>	Clears out all cached product instances.
<a href="#">Retrieve Next Object From List Method on page 223</a>	Given a hierarchical integration object with multiple root components at the second level, this method returns an integration object that contains the header, one root component, its children and their attributes.
<a href="#">Set Action Method on page 224</a>	Sets the Action Code field of all items in the hierarchy of a given product instance to the specified value.
<a href="#">Set Exception Error Message Method on page 225</a>	Called from the workflow to get the localized error message text that is associated with the input error code.
<a href="#">Set Field Value Method on page 225</a>	Sets a specified field to the given values for all items in the product instance that meet an optional condition.
<a href="#">Set Multiple Field Values Method on page 226</a>	Sets specified fields to the given values for all items in the product instance.
<a href="#">Set Output Header Method on page 227</a>	Caches the output header that will be used by the Apply and Delta methods.

Table 15. PMT Methods

Method	Comment
<a href="#">Set Product Instance Method on page 227</a>	Caches a product instance that will be used as an input arguments for Apply and Delta methods.
<a href="#">Set Profile Attribute Method on page 228</a>	Assigns values to attributes in a user profile.
<a href="#">Synchronize Method on page 228</a>	Synchronizes product instance to the database. Optionally, this method also reprices the instance after it is synchronized by calling the Pricing Manager Reprice/RepriceAll. This method calls the EAI Siebel Adapter Execute method to synchronize or upsert.
<a href="#">Update Multi Object List Method on page 229</a>	After a root integration component is stripped from the integration object by the Retrieve Next Object From List method, this method returns the resulting integration object.
<a href="#">Update Order Line Item Completed Flag Method on page 230</a>	Sets the Order Item Processed Flag of the root order line item to Y, if its status and that of all its child items is Complete, Rejected, or `.`.
<a href="#">Get Cfg Button Click Information Method on page 231</a>	Identifies the button the user has clicked in the Complex Product view.
<a href="#">Refresh Business Component Method on page 231</a>	Reexecutes all instances of the specific buscomp to get data from the database.
<a href="#">Invoke BC Method on page 232</a>	Allows a business component-based method to be invoked from a workflow. Acts as a bridge to pass the business component name and method name, along with the parameters, and returns the value required from the workflow to the specified business component
<a href="#">"Iterate Process For Selected Rows Method" on page 232</a>	Loops through all selected rows in the active business component and initiates the specified workflow process for each row.
<a href="#">"Get Selected Row Count Method" on page 233</a>	Returns the number of rows selected in the active business component (for example, the business component that initiated the workflow).
<a href="#">"Get First Selected Row Values Method" on page 234</a>	Queries the active business component for a given set of field values (specified by the Fields argument) to be assembled and returned in the output property set.
<a href="#">"Ungroup Method" on page 234</a>	Creates multiple instances of a product. The number of instances is determined by the value of the field defined by the ExplodeOnField argument. For each new instance, the value of ExplodeOnField is set to 1. An existing instance is considered for explosion only if it meets the conditions specified by ConditionFieldNames and ConditionValues.

## User Properties used by PMT Methods

The following user properties are used by PMT methods:

- **Alias Action Code.** Used by Delta and Apply to extend the standard set of action codes by creating aliases.

Syntax: Alias Action Code = "<action code>","<alias action code>","<expr to satisfy on Delta>"

Example:

Name = Alias Action Code 1

Value = "Update", "Suspend", "[Old Asset Status] = "Active" AND [Asset Status] = "Suspended"

- **Asset Integration Object Name.** Name of the integration object that is based upon the Asset business object.

- **Attribute Integration Component Name.** Name of the integration component that is based on the extended attribute business component. For example, Quote Item XA is a line item's extended attribute. This value should be the same for all three integration objects: asset, quote, and order.

- **Attribute Item Map.** Used by the Convert Product Instance, Delta, and Apply methods to map Asset, Quote, and Order attribute fields. It allows the methods to transform one data type (Asset, Quote, or Order) to another data type (Asset, Quote, or Order).

Syntax: Name = Src Int Obj Name.Src Int Comp Name:Dest Int Obj Name.Dest Int Comp Name Map #

Value = [Src Field]:[Dst Field]

Example:

Name = SIS OM Quote.XA:SIS OM Order.XA Map 20

Value = [Name]:[Name]

- **Cancel Button Return.** Output value of the Get Cfg Button Click Info method when the Cancel button is clicked in the Complex Product view.

- **Delta Line Item Compare Field.** Used by the Delta method to determine which Asset line item fields are compared to determine if two line items are different.

Syntax: Delta Line Item Compare Field = [Asset line item Integration Field]:[Quote/Order line item Integration object field]

- **Delta Old Field.** Used by the Delta method to capture the old value of a line item field when it is changed by a Modify Order.

Syntax: Delta Old Field # = [field name]:[field name to store old value]

Example:

Name = Delta Old Field 1

Value = [Status]:[Old Status]

- **Delta XA Compare Field.** Used by the Delta method to determine which Asset Line Item's attribute fields are compared to determine if two line item's attributes are different.

Delta Line Item Compare Field = [Asset line item Integration Field]:[Quote/Order line item Integration object field]

Example: If an Order line item's Account Id field is mapped to the Asset Line item's Owner Account Id, PMT user property Quote Integration Object Name is set to SISOM Order, and user property Asset Integration Object name is set to SIS OM Asset, the following user property is created:

SIS OM Order Line Item:SIS OM Asset Line Map 20 [Account Id]:[Owner Account Id]

- **Delta XA Old Field.** Used by the Delta method to capture the old value of an XA field when it is changed by a Modify Order.

Syntax: Delta XA Old Field # = [field name]:[field name to store old value]

Example:

Name = Delta XA Old Field 1

Value = [Value]:[Old Value]

- **Done Button Return.** Output value of the Get Cfg Button Click Info method when the Done button is clicked in the Complex Product view.
- **Header Integration Component Name.** Name of the integration component that is based on header business components. A Quote is a header of a Quote, an Order is a header of an Order, and so on. This value should be the same for all three integration objects: asset, quote, and order.
- **Header Map.** Similar to the Attribute Item Map except that this user property maps header fields.

Syntax: Name = Src Int Obj Name.Src Int Comp Name:Dest Int Obj Name.Dest Int Comp Name Map #

Value = [Src Field]:[Dst Field]

- **Line Item Integration Component Name.** Name of the integration component that is based on line item business components. Quote Item is a line item component, Order Item is a line item component, and so on. This value should be the same for all three integration objects: asset, quote, and order.

- **Line Item Map.** Similar to the Attribute Item Map except that this user property maps line item fields.

Syntax: Name = Src Int Obj Name.Src Int Comp Name:Dest Int Obj Name.Dest Int Comp Name  
Map #

Value = [Src Field]:[Dst Field]

Example: If an Order line item's Account Id field is mapped to the Asset Line item's Owner Account Id, PMT user property Order Integration Object Name is set to SIS OM Order, and user property Asset Integration Object name is set to SIS OM Asset, the following user property is created:

Name = SIS OM Order.Line Item:SIS OM Asset.Line Item Map 20

Value = [Account Id]:[Owner Account Id]

- **Order Integration Object Name.** Name of the integration object that is based on an Order business object.
- **Quote Integration Object Name.** Name of the integration object that is based on a Quote business object.
- **Workflow Product Configuration View.** Specifies which view the Product Configurator is to use when PMT method Reconfigure Product Instance is invoked.

**NOTE:** The name of the view must be added to both the Application Admin > Views and Application Admin > Responsibilities views in the Siebel client.

Syntax: SIS OM Reconfigure Complex Product View Name: Account

SIS OM Complex Product Runtime Instance View - Account

## Delta Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It generates the actions necessary to change an existing customizable product (asset) into a new customizable product. The set of actions can be written to a quote or an order.

Delta compares two complex assets (original and modified) and returns a quote or order. The return contains line items that specify the actions required to change the asset from the original state to the final state.

**NOTE:** An update occurs if a field in the product or any of its attributes changes. The list of fields being compared is defined by the Delta Line Item Compare Field user properties. This list of fields is configurable to support customer extensions to the database.

### Arguments

*SiebelMessage*

[in] Hierarchical property set containing the final Asset (output returned from call to PMT business service method [Reconfigure Product Instance Method](#)).

### *SiebelMessage*

[out] Hierarchical property set containing a quote or order header, complex line items, and attributes.

### **Returns**

Property Set containing the complex quote or order.

### **Remarks**

Because Delta is used frequently, you may be able to use the additional information about the method presented below.

### **User Properties**

The Delta method uses the following user properties:

- Asset Integration Object Name
- Quote Integration Object Name
- Order Integration Object Name
- Delta Line Item Compare Field
- Delta XA Compare Field
- Delta Old Field
- Delta XA Old Field
- Line Item Map
- Attribute Item Map
- Alias Action Code

For descriptions of these user properties, see ["User Properties used by PMT Methods" on page 179](#).

### **Before Invocation**

Before Delta is invoked, the system must call two other methods:

- Set Product Instance  
Saves the original asset's configuration before the Product Configurator is called. For more information, see ["Reconfigure Product Instance Method" on page 221](#).
- Set Output Header  
Saves the quote or order header that will be the Delta output. If a line item or attribute is associated with the Quote or Order property set, it is stripped from the property set returned by the Delta method. For more information, see ["Set Output Header Method" on page 227](#).

### **Processing**

During Delta processing, the method:

- Compares the before and after images to determine the correct action codes for output.

- Passes all fields in the new customizable asset through to the delta quote or delta order. This includes all custom fields.

Delta compares a user-configurable set of fields. This includes the parent component ID to make sure that changes to the customizable product structure are reflected as an update.

### Increasing Quantities of an Asset Component

If the user edits a customizable asset and increases the quantity of an existing component, the result is two line items. The first line item represents the original asset. The second line item adds new copies of that asset. If the original line item is changed, the Delta action is Modified or NULL.

### Action Field in the Quote and Order Attribute Tables

Delta logic populates an Action field in the quote attribute and order attribute tables. This field allows order provisioning logic to determine which of the attributes of a service product has changed.

For example, a delta quote can be represented as shown in [Figure 24](#):

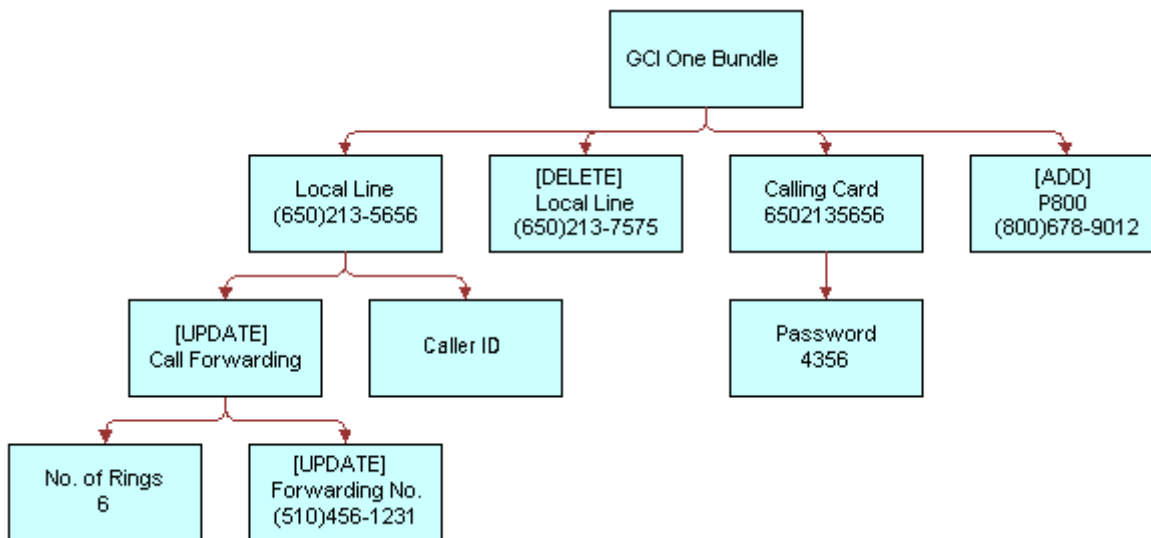


Figure 24. Action on Attribute Method Example

In this example, the call forwarding number changed but the number of rings did not.

### Action Codes Reset Upon Delta Line Item or Attribute Changes

When a delta-enabled field in a line item changes (because of direct user input or a process such as repricing) or an attribute of a line item changes, the action code is automatically set. This is shown in [Table 16](#).

Table 16. Line Item Action Code Transitions

Original Action	New Action
-	Update
Add	Add
Update	Update
Delete	Delete

**NOTE:** The customer should make the Action field Read-Only to avoid possible violations of configuration rules that could be caused by changing the action code of a line item.

**Alias Action Codes**

The Delta method has been extended to support *Alias Action Codes*. Delta replaces one of the standard action codes (Add, Update, Delete, -) with an alias action code if a certain condition is met. For example, an action code of *Update* may be replaced by *Suspend* if the status field changes from *Active* to *Suspended*. Alias action codes are evaluated for components but not attributes. Alias action codes are specified by the Alias Action Code user properties.

**Old Value Support**

When performing a modify order in Siebel Customer Order Management 7.5, you can view the changes made to a product but only the end state, and values prior to the modify are lost. Downstream provisioning systems require both the prior and current values. For example, a change in bandwidth from 56K to 1024K might require a new piece of equipment to be installed at the wire center whereas a change from 2048K to 1024K is simply a downgrade using the existing equipment.

The Delta method has been extended to store the values of fields prior to their being changed. The prior value is the value of the field in the initial property set being considered by Delta.

**Service Item Unique Keys (Asset Integration Id)**

The Delta and Apply method operations depend upon the unique keys to each service item. Typically, the unique key is an invariable combination of fields in the service item record. Because no combination of user-entered fields is certain to be unique or invariable, the Siebel application provides a hidden Asset Integration Id field that stores a unique identifier for each service item.

The asset integration ID links the service item to the quotes and orders that modify it. On creation of a quote to add a new service item a new asset integration ID is generated from the row ID of the quote line item. The quote is converted to an order at which time a new asset integration ID is generated from the row ID of the order line item. This occurs only if the action code of the quote line item is 'Add' to enforce uniqueness if multiple orders are created from the same quote.



When the completed order is converted into an asset the asset integration ID is copied from the order line item to asset. When the asset is subsequently modified (Modify or Disconnect) the asset integration ID is copied to the quote and order line items.

**Action Types**

Each action types is implemented as a soft-coded list of values. This soft coding supports a multilingual user interface and allows for industry specific terminology. The action types supported by the Siebel application are listed in [Table 17](#).

Table 17. Action Types

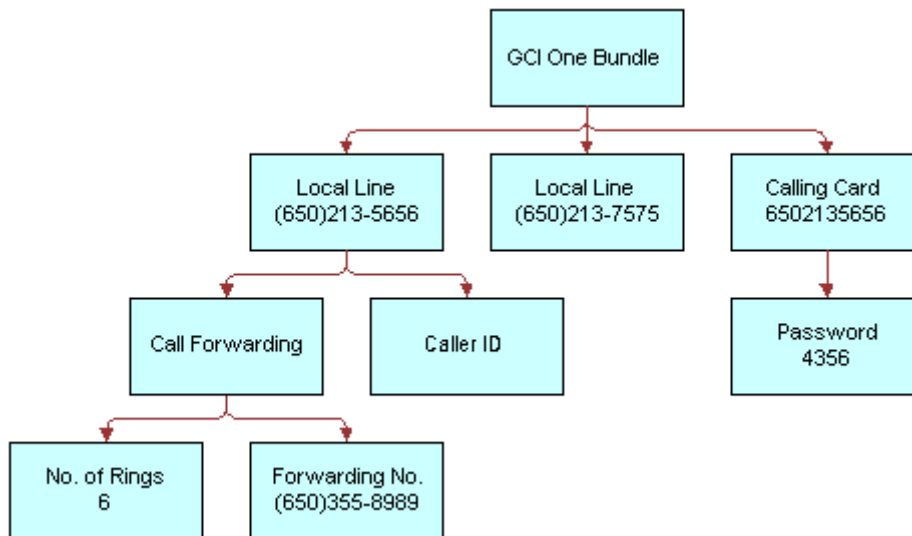
Action Type	Comments
Add	
Update	
Delete	
-	No action

**Examples**

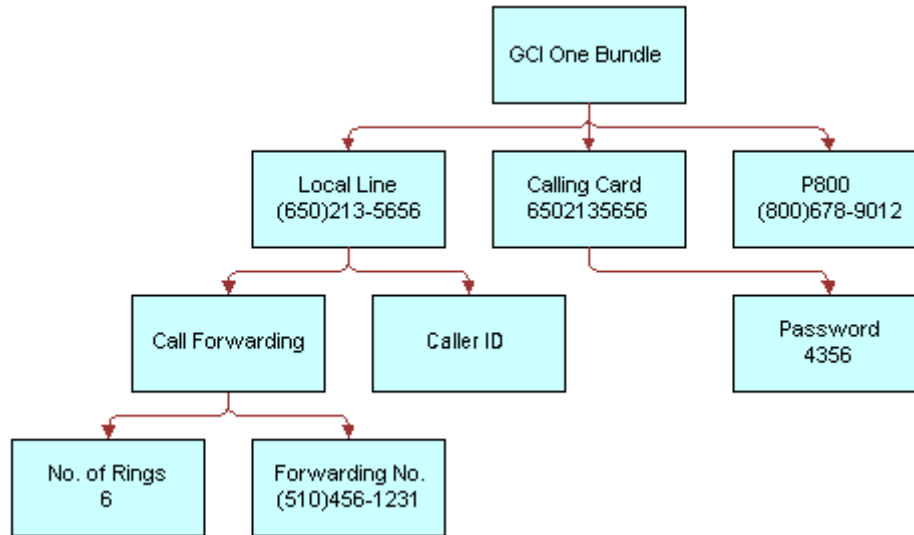
**Generating a Delta Quote to Update an Asset**

The following example shows how this method generates a delta quote to update an asset.

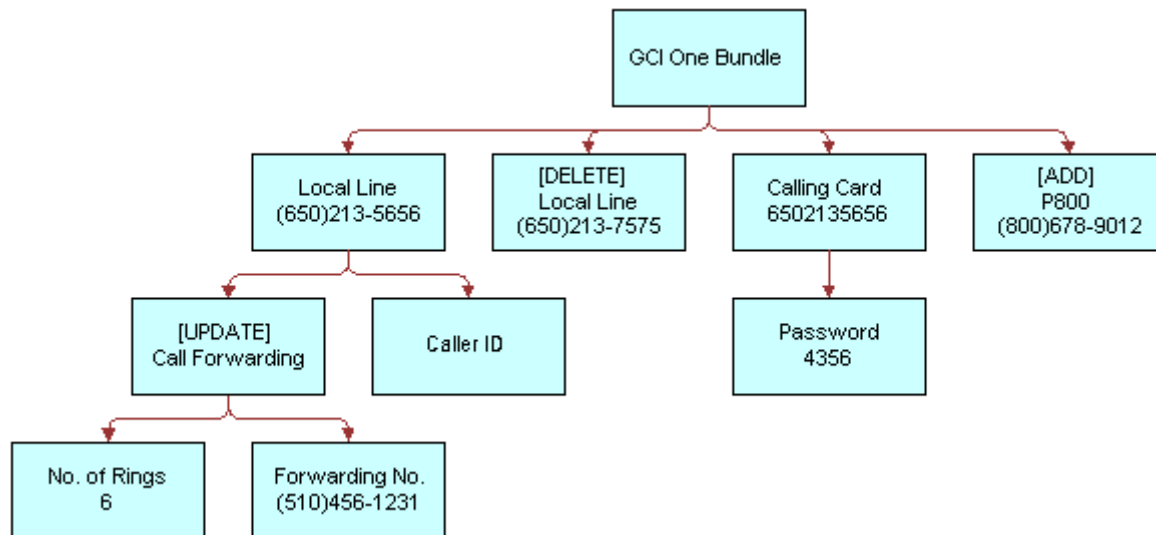
- 1 A configuration session starts with the GCI One Bundle in the state shown in the following diagram.



2 A CSR updates the customizable asset.



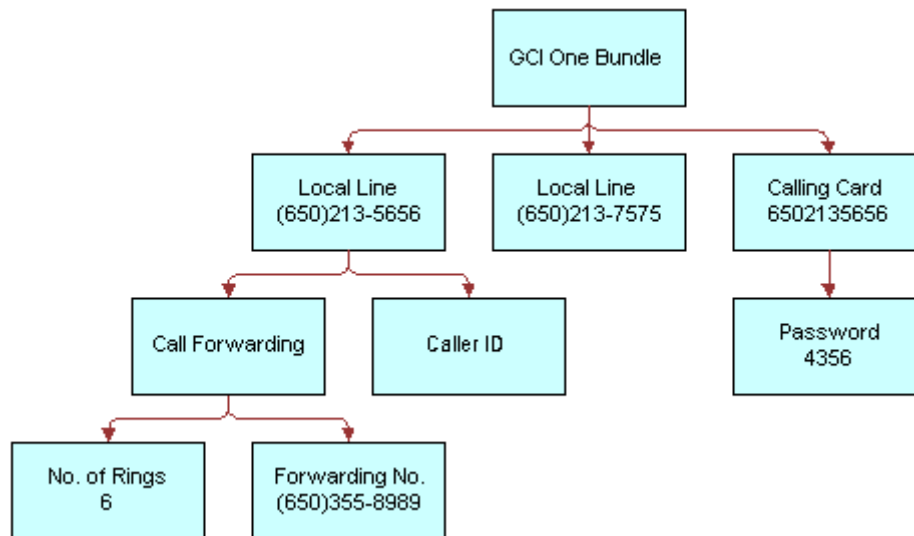
3 The Delta method generates the delta quote shown in the following diagram.



**Generating a Delta Quote to Add a New Asset**

The following example shows how this method generates a delta quote to add a new asset.

- 4 A configuration session starts with no existing asset. The user configures a new customizable product.

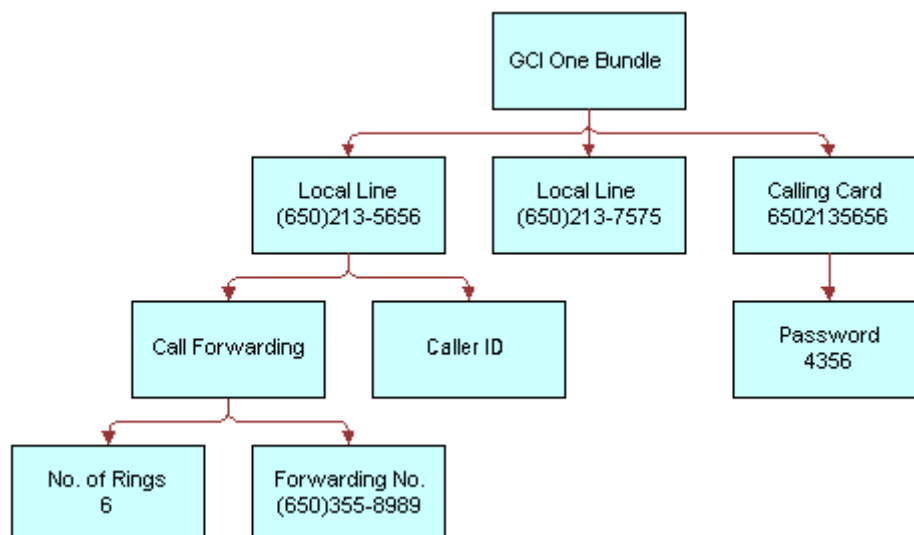


- 5 The Delta method generates the following delta quote.

**Generating a Delta Quote to Disconnect an Asset**

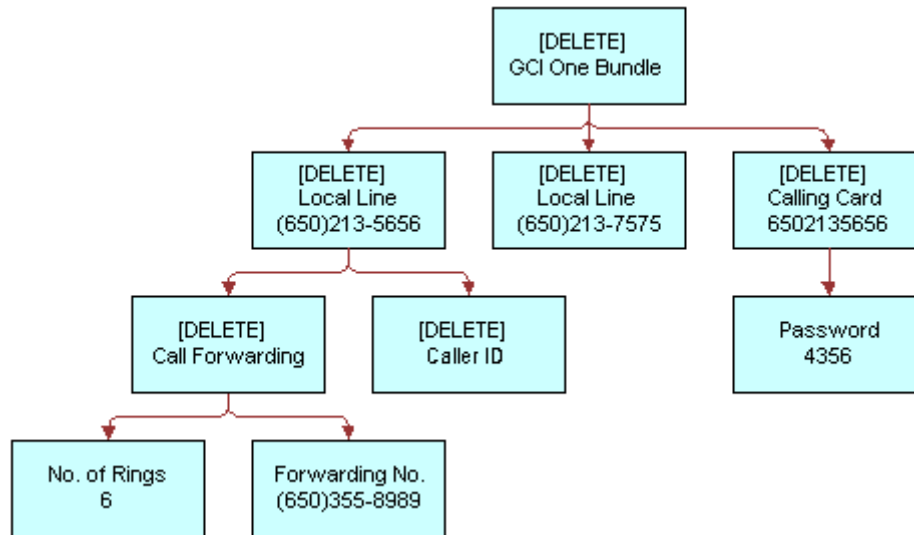
The following example shows how this method generates a delta quote to disconnect an asset.

- 6 The user selects a customizable asset in the service profile view.



7 The user clicks Disconnect.

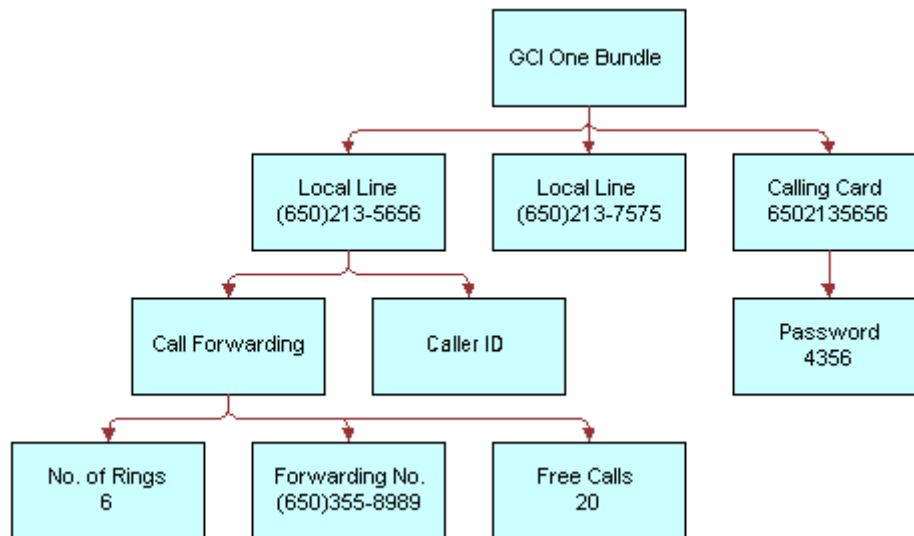
A workflow runs Delta with the current state of the customizable asset and an empty customizable asset as input arguments. The resultant delta quote is shown below.



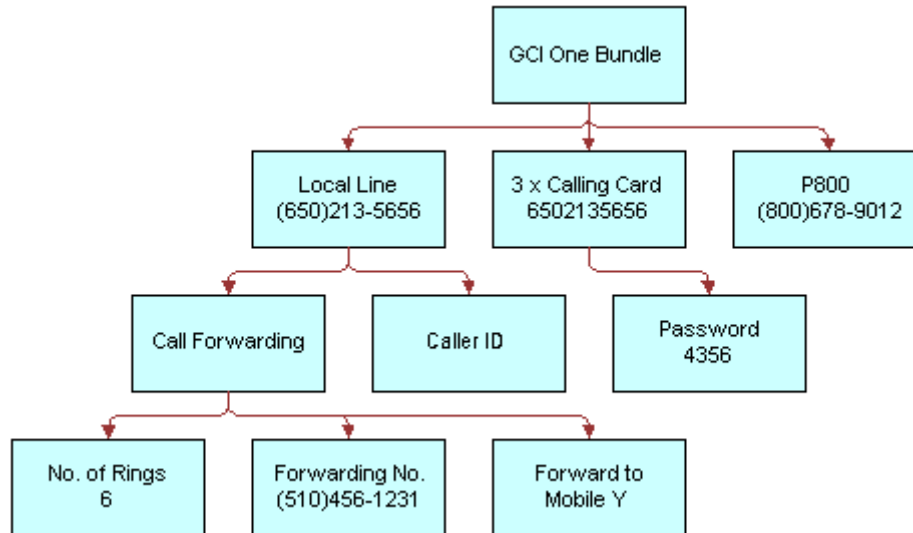
**Generating a Delta Property Set to Add More Assets**

The following example shows how this method generates a delta property set to add additional copies of an asset.

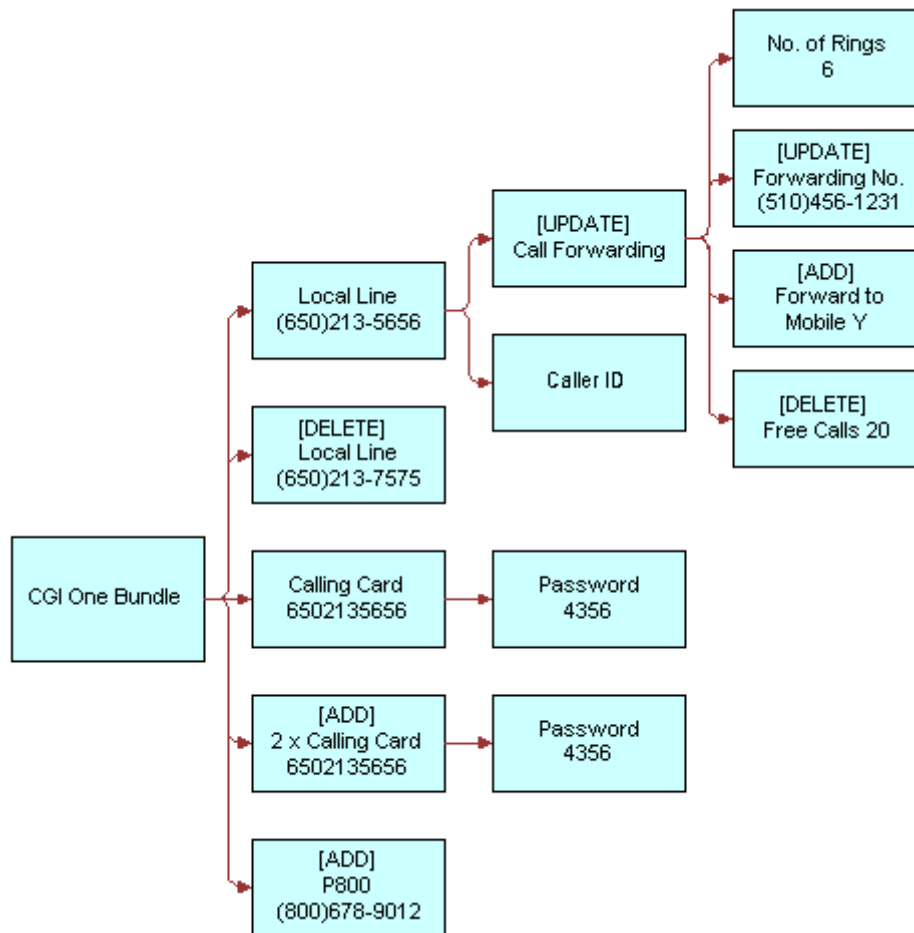
8 The user selects a customizable asset in the service profile view.



- 9 The user makes various changes including changing the quantity of Calling Card from one to three.



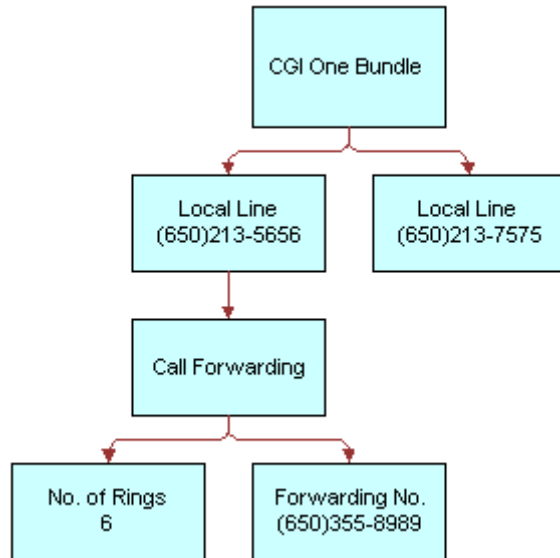
**10** Delta generates the following delta property set. The calling card record is split out into the original, unchanged asset and an action to add the new copies of the original calling card.



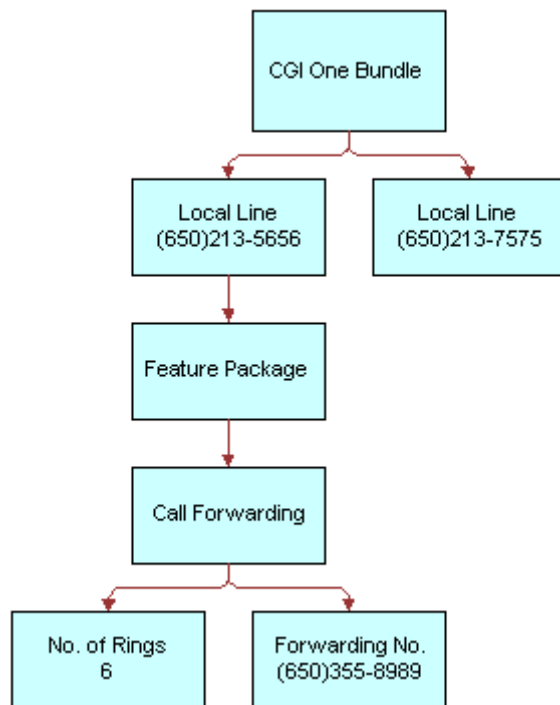
**Identifying Changes in Product Structure**

The following example shows how this method is used to change a product structure.

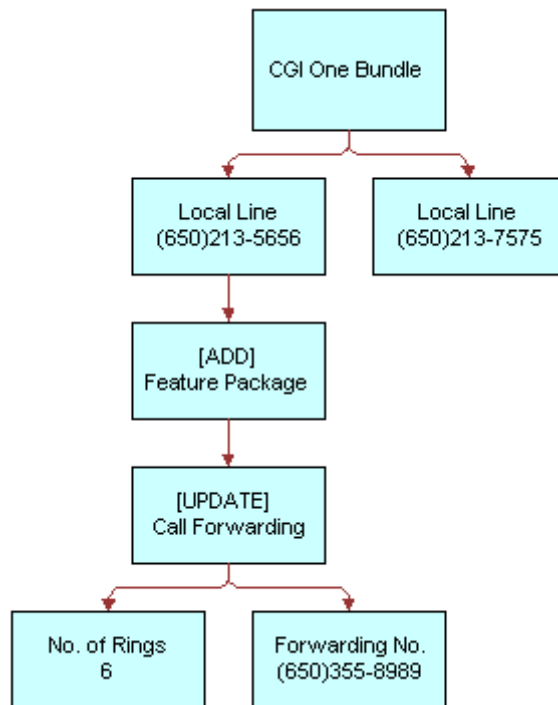
11 The user selects a customizable product in the customer profile view.



12 Since this asset was created, the customizable product structure has changed to group all features beneath a Feature Package component. When the product is loaded into the Configurator, it is relinked and displayed the following way.



- 13 When the new structure is saved, Delta identifies the new Feature Package component and marks the Call Forwarding feature for update because its parent has changed.



**See Also:**

Methods ["Apply Method"](#) on page 192, ["Trim Method"](#) on page 203, ["Reconfigure Product Instance Method"](#) on page 221, ["Set Output Header Method"](#) on page 227, and ["Set Product Instance Method"](#) on page 227 and workflows ["SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item"](#) on page 149, ["SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item"](#) on page 153, ["SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow"](#) on page 165, ["SIS OM Disconnect Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 168, ["SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 171.

## Apply Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It applies changes defined by a Sales order line item to a customizable asset. This method uses, as a base, an asset that is cached as a result of a call to set the Product Instance and optionally, a header (asset, quote, or order), passed in during the Set Output Header.



## Arguments

### *OpenOrders*

[in] Output result of a call to Business Service Find Orders. (Optional)

For more information, see “Remarks” on page 193.

**NOTE:** Either *OpenOrders* or *SiebelMessage* is acceptable as input but not both.

### *SiebelMessage*

[in] Contains a single complex Open Order or an Open Quote Line Item. (Optional)

**NOTE:** Either *SiebelMessage* or *OpenOrders* is acceptable as input but not both.

### *SiebelMessage*

[out] Output asset image representing a future configurable asset.

### *Is Apply Result Empty*

[out] Y if all the line items are removed from the result, or if the information supplied to create an asset is insufficient information.

**NOTE:** Either *SiebelMessage* or *Is Apply Result Empty* is returned as output but not both.

## Returns

An asset PropertySet that represents the original input asset plus the changes defined in the input quote or order line item.

## Remarks

### Input Arguments

To meet its requirements as a general-purpose tool for processing throughout the Asset-Quote-Order life cycle, the Apply method can accept a variety of arguments as input. All input parameters are optional to a varying degree, and the combination of parameters will be determined by the data present and the desired operation.

Apply handles four possible input parameters:

- *OpenOrders* [input] PropertySet representing a series of Open Orders

*OpenOrders* can be passed as one of two arguments directly in the Apply method invocation. When a single *OpenOrder* is to be processed, this argument can be supplied through a standard *SiebelMessage* PropertySet, obtained through a call to a standard Siebel Adapter. It can be either an Order or a Quote subtype (Quote only on Modify Quote Workflows).

When more than one Open Order is involved in creating the Output Asset, *OpenOrders* is supplied by a multiple hierarchy *OpenOrders* type, obtained by invoking the Find Orders Business Service method. Apply checks for the presence of *OpenOrders* first, and only looks for the single-order *SiebelMessage* if *OpenOrders* is not supplied. If both are supplied, only *OpenOrders* is processed. If neither is supplied and Input Asset is supplied, the Apply method passes the Input Asset PropertySet back as the Output Asset PropertySet.

■ SiebelMessage [input] PropertySet

This input represents a single Open Order. See the description above.

■ Asset [input] PropertySet

This argument is passed through the Set Product Instance method invocation before Apply is invoked. The Input Asset PropertySet is the base Asset upon which all changes from Open Orders are applied. If no Assets related to the Open Orders are being applied, the call to Set Product Instance is skipped.

■ Header[output] PropertySet

This argument is passed through the method invocations before Apply is invoked. Ordinarily, the Output Header normally is not supplied. However, if it is supplied, it is passed into the Business Service by a separate invocation of Set Output Header immediately before Apply is invoked.

Under most operating conditions, Apply determines the contents of the Output Header from the Input Asset or the Input Orders. However, when the Output Header is supplied, it is passed into the Business Service by a separate invocation of SetOutputHeader immediately before Apply is invoked. The Output Header can be a SiebelMessage PropertySet of type Asset, Order or Quote. It can be either an empty header without subordinate data or a fully formed hierarchy with associated child item data. When child item data is carried with the Output Header, the child item data is removed.

Generally, the Output Header gives the Apply method specific data to create an update Output Header for later synchronization by a Siebel Adapter. It should be used only if the Output Header that results from Input Asset or the Input Open Order processing is insufficient for resynchronization.

It is also possible (and occasionally valid) to invoke Apply without passing any arguments at all. If no input is specified at all, Apply returns a value of Y in the Is Apply Result Empty Process Property. This result is also returned when the resulting Asset contains only a header, but no items.

### **Creating a hybrid asset order**

Apply creates a hybrid asset-order to simulate the future configuration of a complex product. Taking an asset representing a complex product as input, Apply overlays all unprocessed items and attributes of that product from all its open orders onto the asset. Because the asset's items and attributes are already provisioned, their action codes will carry the internationalized equivalent of the \*(blank) value.

### **Service Item Unique Keys**

The Apply and Delta method operations depend upon the unique keys to each service item. For more information, see the description of [Delta Method on page 181](#).

Apply assumes that the asset used as a base on which to apply open orders was set using Set Product Instance. If no asset is supplied, either the first Open Order or the single (SiebelMessage) Open Quote or Order will be used as the basis for creating a new complex asset. If neither asset nor Open Order is supplied, the method returns an Empty result.

### Exception Handling

Apply handles all service quote or sales order actions even if they include possible conflicts. For example, if a service quote line item instructs the method to modify a service item that is already disconnected, Apply logic ignores the service quote line item. The exception conditions handled by Apply are listed below.

Apply is executed in two steps:

**1** SetProductInstance (Asset PropSet)

This action initializes internal structures and stores the passed PropertySets that are the result of an earlier invocation of Siebel EAI Adapters. Because a business service is limited to a single hierarchy per invocation, the PMT business service is invoked twice to pass both PropertySets.

**NOTE:** The Asset PropertySet is assumed to be a single hierarchy representing a single complex item, keyed by the integration ID for the root of the complex item.

**2** Apply (OpenOrders PropSet)

This action does the following:

- Retrieves the Asset PropertySet from its internal storage (established by calling Set Product Instance) and instantiates the output complex object from it.
- Instantiates a complex object from the OpenOrders PropertySet input parameter.
- Iterates through the OpenOrder PropertySet, applying each item in turn, repeating for each open order in ascending chronological sequence.
- Whenever the hierarchical structure is altered, Apply fixes the output hierarchy to reflect the OpenOrder.
- Returns the output property set.

**NOTE:** The OpenOrders PropertySet is assumed to be one of a Null hierarchy, a single hierarchy representing one complex item, or a container of iterations of a complex item, each representing a change over time. The integration ID for the root of the complex item is the key for the item.

The Apply method handles the exception conditions listed in the following table.

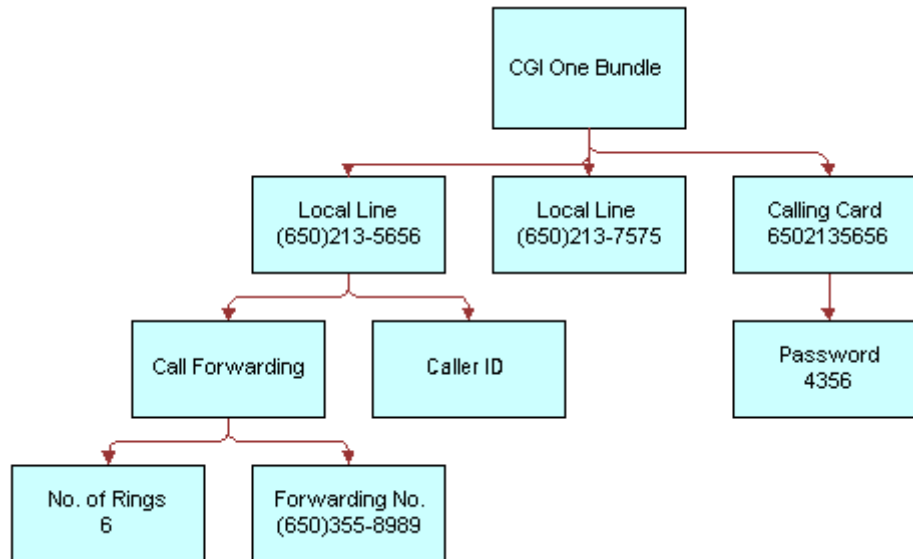
Exception	Action	Reason
Instruction to add an item that already exists.	Ignores the add instruction. Attributes and the price are not updates.	The instruction is outdated. Therefore, the attributes are unreliable.
Instruction to update an item that no longer exists.	Ignores the update instruction.	The instruction is outdated. It cannot be performed.
Instruction to delete an item that no longer exists.	Ignores the delete instruction.	The action has already occurred.
Instruction to do nothing to an item that does not exist.	No action.	A sequencing problem may have occurred.

### Examples

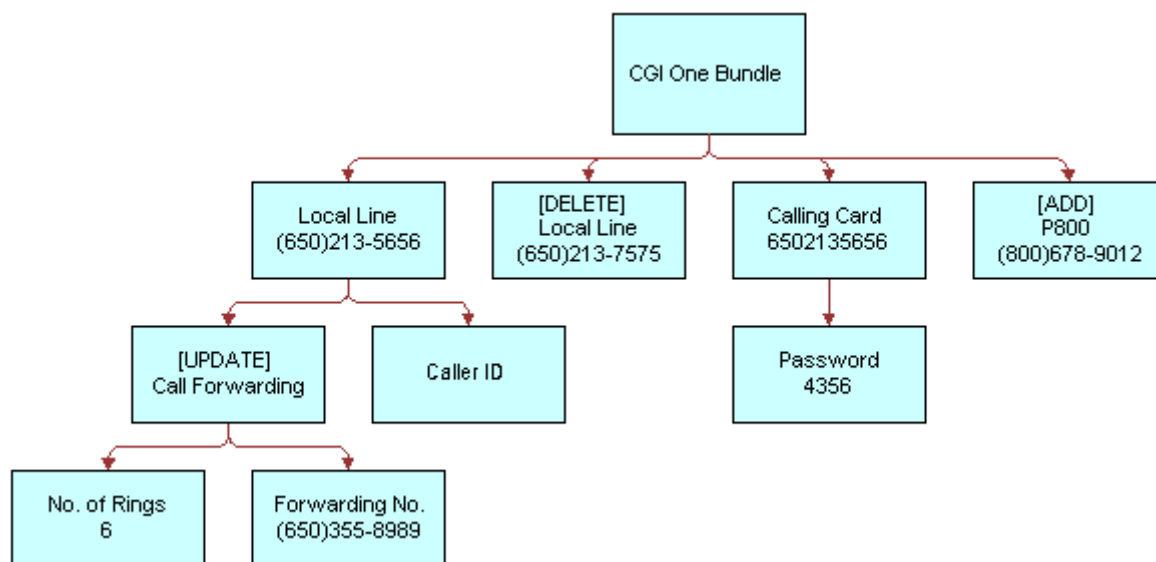
#### Add, Update, Delete a Complex Order

The following example shows how this method applies add, update, and delete instructions on an order to an existing asset.

- 1 Start with a customizable asset.

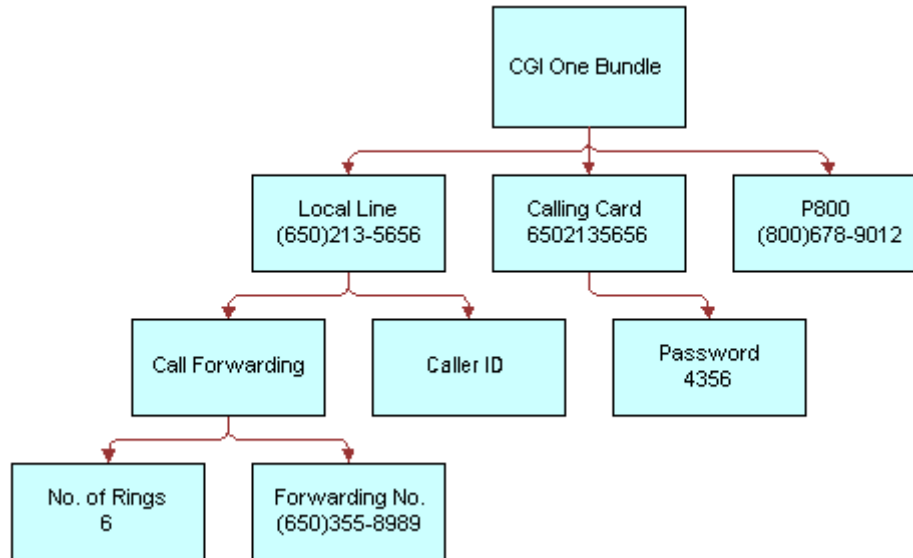


- 2 Apply a delta order.



For more information, see ["Delta Method" on page 181](#).

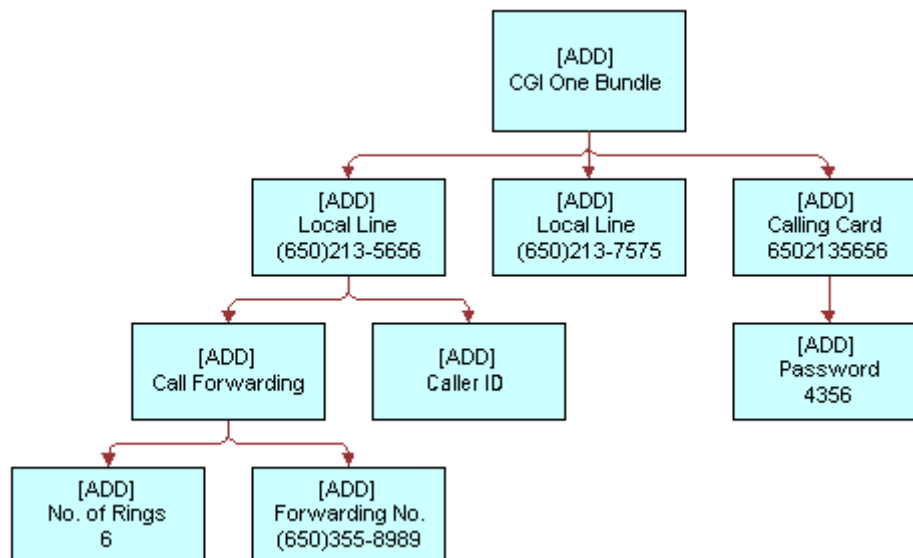
3 A new customizable asset is created.



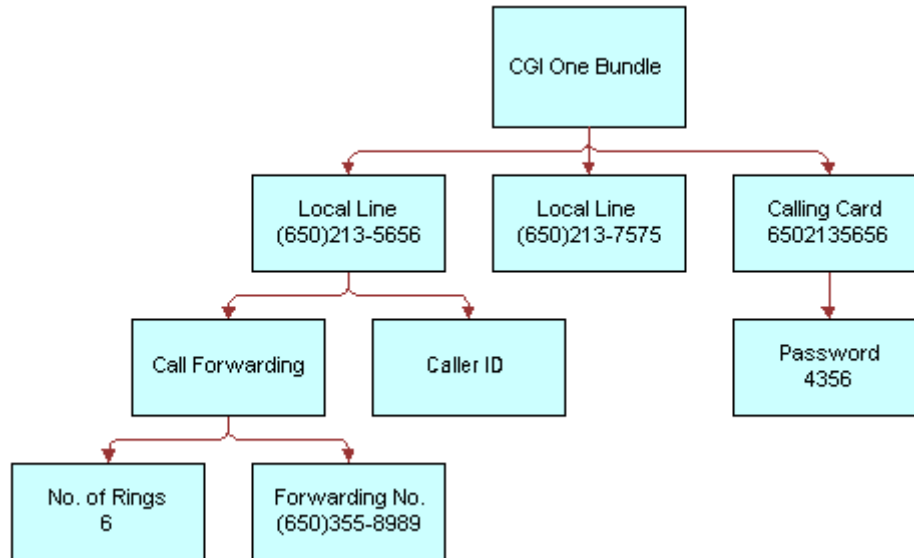
### Process a new installation

The following example shows how this method is used to process a new installation.

- 4 Start with no asset.
- 5 Apply a new installation.



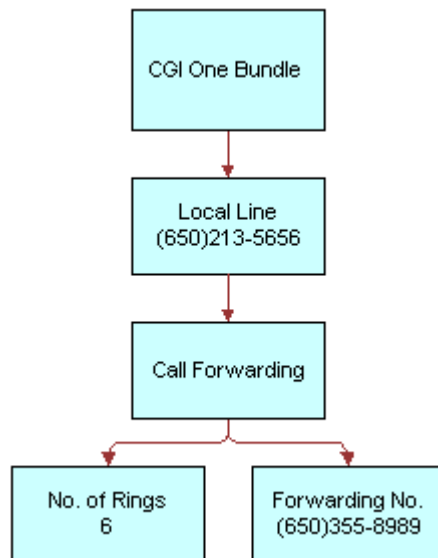
6 A new customizable asset is created.



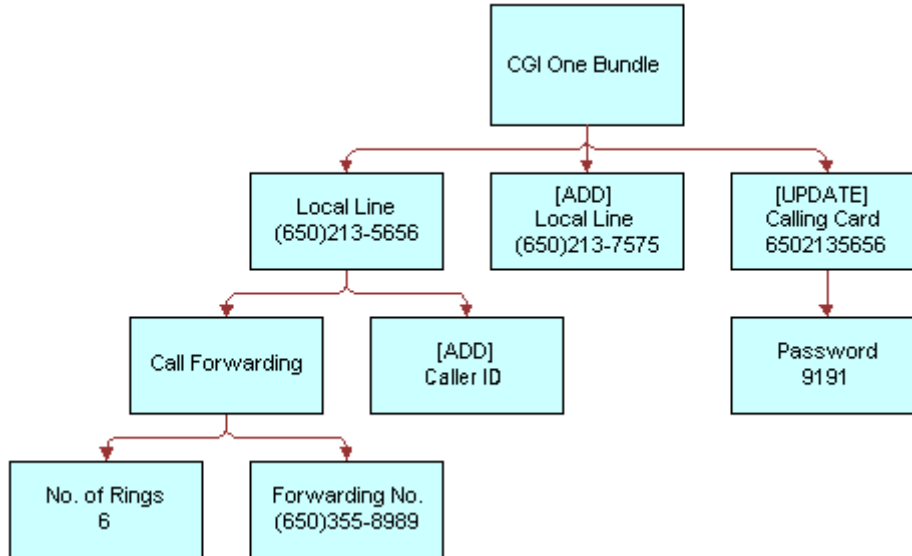
### **Ignores Instructions to Process Absent Items**

The following example shows how this method is used to process a delta quote that includes an update to an absent item.

7 Start with a customizable asset from an external profile management system.

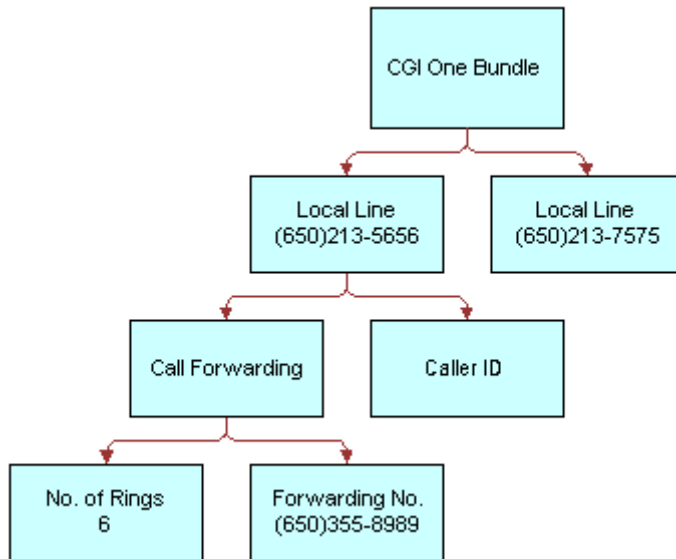


- 8 Apply a delta quote that was generated a week before.



**NOTE:** The calling card referred to in the delta quote was removed from the profile after the quote was created. The [UPDATE] Calling Card branch is ignored.

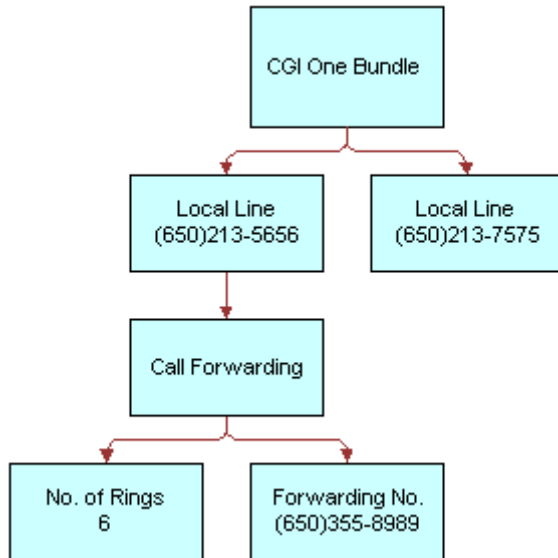
- 9 The Apply method ignores updates to the service item that no longer exists, but successfully executes the remaining changes.



**Ignores Instructions to Add an Already Existing Item**

The following example shows how this method is used to process a delta quote that contains an invalid add instruction.

- 10 Start with a customizable asset from an external profile management system.



- 11 Apply a delta quote that was generated a week before.

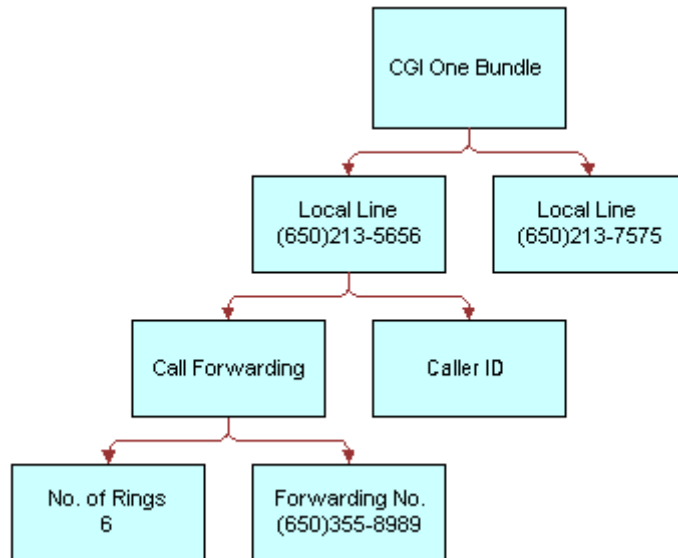
**NOTE:** The second local line, (650) 213-7575, already exists in the service profile. It was provisioned by an external system user.

- 12 Apply ignores add commands where the service item already exists and successfully executes the remaining changes.

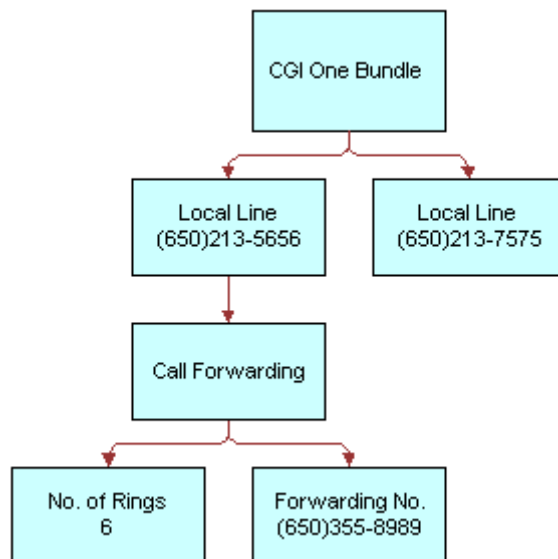
### Process Instructions to Update the Parent of a Component



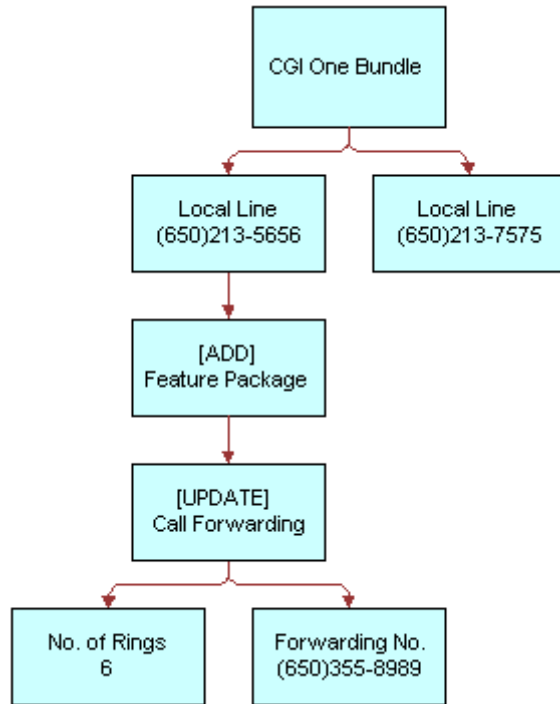
The following example shows how this method is used to process a delta quote that updates the parent component.



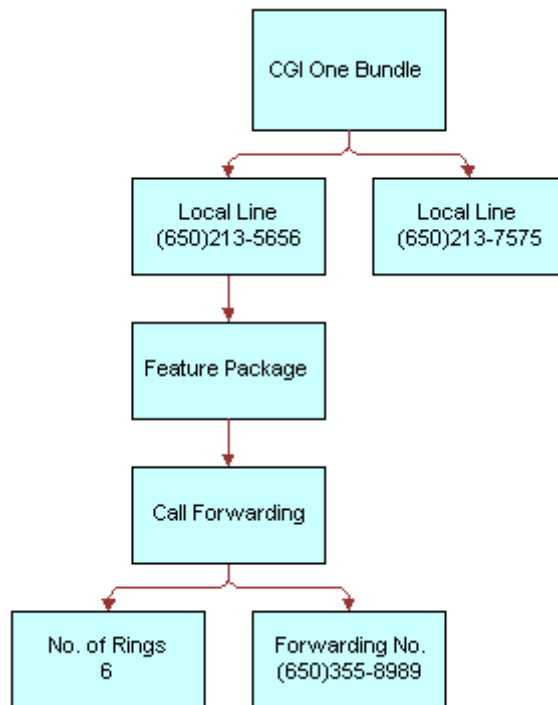
**13** Start with a customizable asset in the old product format.



**14** Apply a delta order that updates the parent component of the Call Forwarding feature.



- 15** The Apply method adds the Feature Package product beneath the local line and re-attaches the existing Call Forwarding feature to the Feature Package.



**See Also**

Methods ["Delta Method"](#) on page 181, ["Trim Method"](#) on page 203, ["Explode Method"](#) on page 206, and ["Set Product Instance Method"](#) on page 227 and workflows ["SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item"](#) on page 149, ["SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item"](#) on page 153, ["SIS OM Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile"](#) on page 156, ["SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow"](#) on page 165, ["SIS OM Disconnect Products & Services Process"](#) on page 167, ["SIS OM Disconnect Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 168, ["SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 171.

## Trim Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It eliminates line items from a delta quote or delta order based on a soft coded rule or Keep Specification. This method is used, in the Order to Asset workflow, to identify changes in an order item that are ready to apply to the service profile stored in Assets.

For a line item to be kept in the product instance hierarchy, KeepSpec must be TRUE for that line item. All children of the line item will also be removed if the parent is removed.

## Arguments

### *KeepSpec*

[in] A Boolean expression based on fields in the current line item. If the line item is to be retained, KeepSpec must return True. (Required)

### *Object Id*

[in] Row Id of the root line item that is used to load the hierarchy if a SiebelMessage is not passed in. (Optional)

### *Input Object Type*

[in] Type of object to which Object Id relates. Must be specified if Object Id is specified. (Optional)

### *SiebelMessage*

[in] Hierarchy to be used if an Object Id is not supplied. (Optional)

### *SiebelMessage*

[out] Resulting product instance.

### *Is Trim Result Empty*

[out] Y or N value. Y if all line items are removed in the result. Otherwise, N.

## Returns

Removes selected line items from the product instance.

## Remarks

If the KeepSpec input is TRUE for a line item, it is kept in the product instance hierarchy. If not, it is eliminated. All children of the line item are removed if the parent is removed.

When Trim is called, the method starts at the top-most item in the product hierarchy and works recursively down through its children. If the KeepSpec evaluates to TRUE for a line item, it is kept in the product instance hierarchy. If not, it and all of its children are eliminated. For example, the KeepSpec for the Order to Asset workflow is:

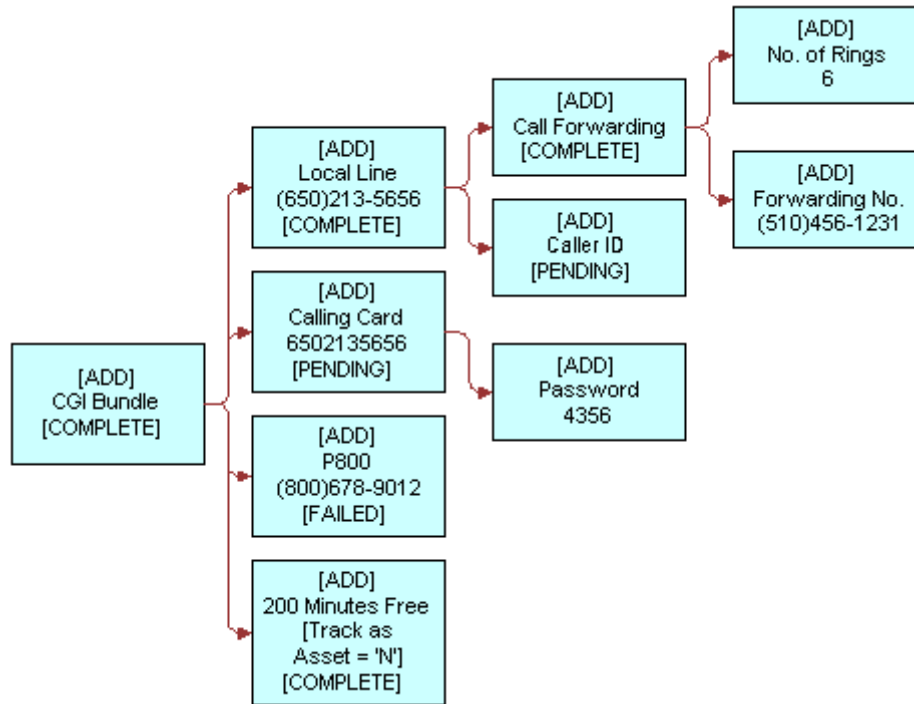
```
(([Status] = LookupValue('FS_ORDER_STATUS', 'Complete')) OR ([Action Code] = LookupValue('DELTA_ACTION_CODE', 'Existing')) AND ([Convert To Asset Flag] = 'Y')
```

## Examples

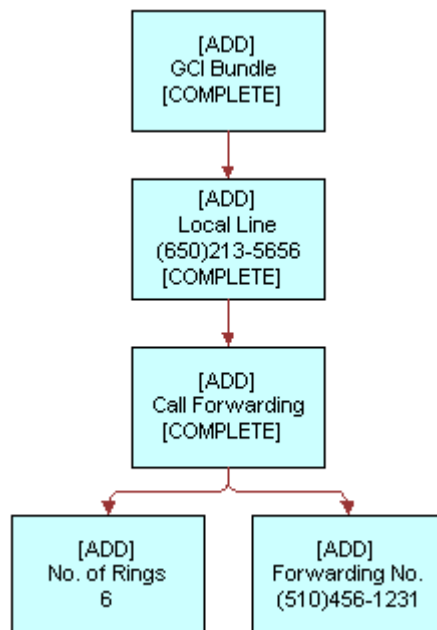
### **Trimming Pending and Failed Items**

The following example shows how this method is used to eliminate pending and failed items.

- 1 A new installation is partially complete.



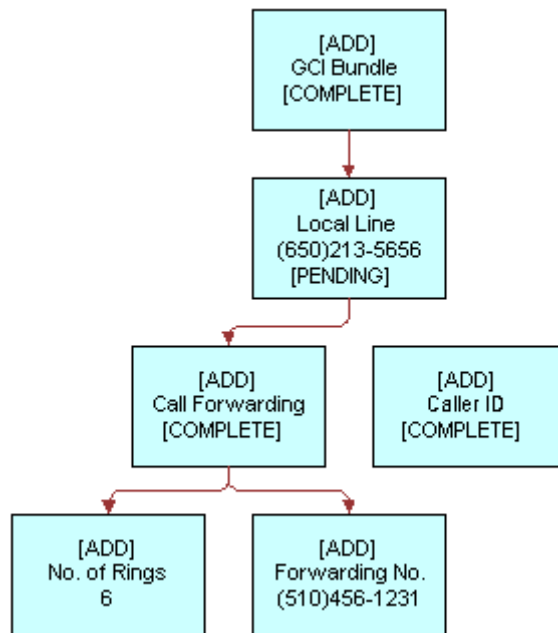
- 2 Trim eliminates all Pending and Failed items. It also eliminates the 200 Minutes Free product because that product has Track As Asset = N.



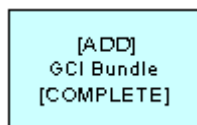
### Trimming Orphaned Items

If an item fails to meet the KeepSpec criteria, this method removes all of its children. The following example shows this situation.

- 3** A user starts a new installation in which a parent item is Pending and a child item is Complete.



- 4** Trim eliminates all Pending or Failed items and their children, Complete or not.



### See Also

Methods ["Delta Method"](#) on page 181 and ["Apply Method"](#) on page 192 and workflows ["SIS OM Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile"](#) on page 156, ["SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item"](#) on page 149, ["SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item"](#) on page 153, ["SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow"](#) on page 165, ["SIS OM Disconnect Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 168, ["SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 171.

## Explode Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It creates multiple instances of a product. The number of instances is determined by the value of the field specified by the `ExplodeOnField` argument. For each new instance, the value of `ExplodeOnField` is set to 1. An existing instance is considered for explosion only if it meets the conditions specified by `ConditionFieldNames` and `ConditionValues`.

**NOTE:** `Explode` works for a quantity set at any level of the product hierarchy.

To exclude fields from being copied from the existing instance to the new instance, add user properties to the SIS OM PMT Business Service. You can use the `ExclusionFieldsUserPropertyTag` input argument to identify the User Properties series used for this purpose.

### Arguments

#### *RootItemId*

[in] Root Item Id. Only the subcomponents of the root line item with a Row Id specified by the `RootItemId` are considered for `Explode`. (Optional)

#### *ExplodeOnField*

[in] Value of the field specified by `ExplodeOnField` determines the number of instances created by `Explode`. For each new instance, the value of the `ExplodeOnField` is set to 1. (Required)

#### *ConditionFieldNames*

[in] Comma separated list of component field names. An existing instance is exploded only if the conditions specified by `ConditionFieldNames` and `ConditionValues` are met. (Optional)

#### *ConditionValues*

[in] Comma separated list of condition values. Standard Siebel expressions (such as `LookupValue`) are supported. An existing instance is exploded only if the conditions specified by `ConditionFieldNames` and `ConditionValues` are met. (Optional)

#### *ExclusionFieldsUserPropertyTag*

[in] Name of the series of user properties that identify fields to exclude when the object instance is copied. The user property name is configurable and specified by `ExclusionFieldsUserPropertyTag`. (Optional)

#### *SiebelMessage*

[in] Product instance to be exploded. (Required)

#### *SiebelMessage*

[out] Product instance (integration object) representing the exploded business component. (Required)

#### *Is Exploded*

[out] Status flag (Y or N) which indicates whether the `SiebelMessage` has been exploded or not. (Optional)

### Returns

Product set containing multiple copies of the original component.

### Remarks

Explode copies any product component whose quantity > 1. It creates multiple copies, each with quantity = 1. By default, products with the Convert to Asset flag set to N are ignored. This method inputs and outputs a property set containing product changes.

A user configurable list identifies fields that are excluded during the copy. For example, a user would not create multiple copies of a unique identifier such as a telephone number.

### Excluded Fields

All fields, including prices, are copied as is into each new instance of the service item except the following columns that can not be copied, by default:

- Asset Integration Id
- Conflict Id
- Created
- Sequence Number
- Updated
- Id
- Integration Id
- Quantity
- Service Point Id
- Extended Quantity

### User Properties

This method uses the default user properties listed below to define a list of integration component fields that are not copied when the parent integration object is exploded.

- Exclude From Explode.SIS OM Order.Line Item 11 to Exclude From Explode.SIS OM Order.Line Item 20
- Exclude From Explode.SIS OM Quote.Line Item 1 to Exclude From Explode.SIS OM Quote.Line Item 10

The general format for all these user properties is:

<User Prop Name>.<Integration Object Name>.<Integration Component Name>#

### Examples

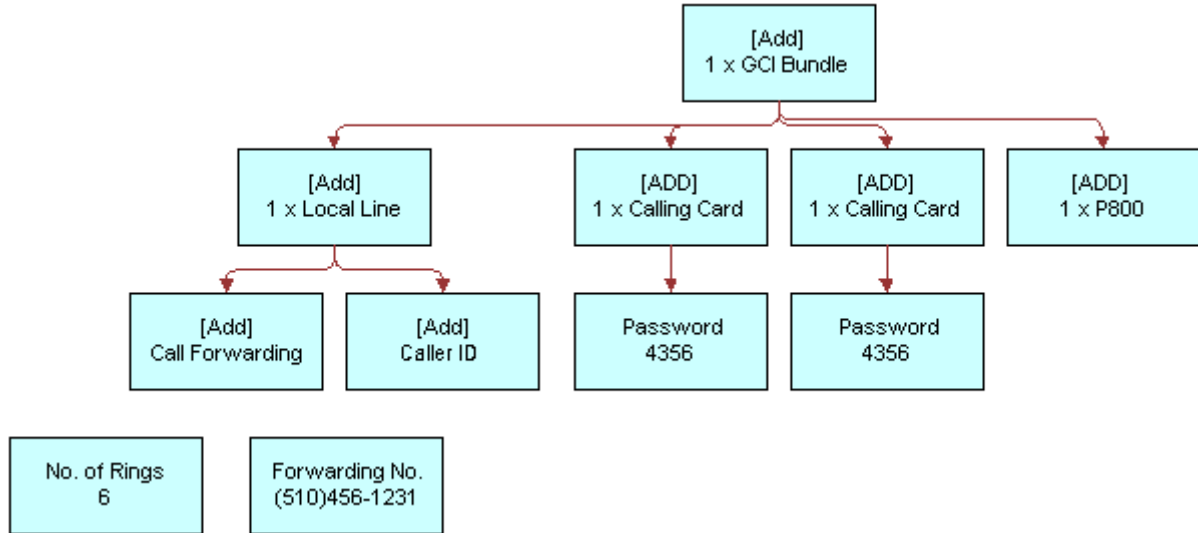
#### Copying Components Whose Quantity Exceeds 1

The following example shows this method creates multiple copies of a component.

- 1 Start with an order to add multiple Calling Cards as part of a GCI One Bundle.



2 Explode copies all components with quantity > 1. For example:



**See Also**

Methods "Delta Method" on page 181, "Apply Method" on page 192, "Trim Method" on page 203, "Explode Siebel Object Method" on page 209, and "Is Fully Exploded Method" on page 215 and workflow "SIS OM Quote To Order PMT Version" on page 152.

## Explode Siebel Object Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It functions like [Explode Method](#) except that it also loads the SiebelMessage integration object from the Siebel database with a specified business component and synchronizes it back to the database after the explosion.

**Arguments**

*IntObjectName*

[in] Name of the integration object representing the business component that will be exploded. (Required)

*PrimaryRowId*

[in] Siebel object row ID of the business component that will be exploded. (Required)

*RootItemId*

[in] Root Item Id. Only the subcomponents of the root line item specified by the RootItemId are considered for Explode. (Optional)

### *ExplodeOnField*

[in] Value of the field specified by ExplodeOnField determines the number of instances created by Explode. For each new instance, the value of the ExplodeOnField is set to 1. (Required)

### *ConditionFieldNames*

[in] Comma separated list of integration field names. An existing instance is exploded only if the conditions specified by ConditionFieldNames and ConditionValues are met.

### *ConditionValues*

[in] Comma separated list of condition values. Standard Siebel expressions (such as LookupValue) are supported in each comma separated value. An existing instance is exploded only if the conditions specified by ConditionFieldNames and ConditionValues are met.

### *ExclusionFieldsUserPropertyTag*

[in] Name of the series of user properties that identify fields to exclude when the object instance is copied. The user property name is configurable and specified by ExclusionFieldsUserPropertyTag. (Optional)

### *SiebelMessage*

[out] Product instance (integration object) representing the exploded business component. (Optional)

### *Is Exploded*

[out] Status flag (Y or N) which indicates whether the SiebelMessage has been exploded or not. (Optional)

## **Remarks**

### **User Properties**

This method has the following default user properties:

- Exclude From Explode.SIS OM Order.Line Item 11 to Exclude From Explode.SIS OM Order.Line Item 20
- Exclude From Explode.SIS OM Quote.Line Item 1 to Exclude From Explode.SIS OM Quote.Line Item 10

### **See Also**

Methods ["Explode Method"](#) on page 206 and ["Is Fully Exploded Method"](#) on page 215.

## **Find Orders Method**

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

Given the asset integration ID of a root line item, this method finds all instances of order items that have the same integration ID. The order header, matching line item, its child items and attributes are returned as part of the output. Any other line item in the same order header that does not have a matching integration ID will not be returned.

### Arguments

#### *Asset Integration Id*

[in] Root asset integration ID that is used to open order items to an asset. (Required)

#### *Search Spec*

[in] Additional search specification used to look for open orders. This is a business component search spec that will be applied to the 'Order Entry - Line Item (Asset Based) BC. (Optional)

#### *Sort Order Item By*

[in] Comma separated list of field names. Each field name is optionally followed by the string (DESCENDING). For example, Last Name (DESCENDING), First Name. This forces the method to sort the order line item it locates by the given field names. (Optional)

#### *Open Orders*

[out] A single hierarchy of type OpenOrders that has child hierarchies for each open order that is found.

### See Also

Workflows ["SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item" on page 149](#), ["SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item" on page 153](#), ["SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow" on page 165](#), ["SIS OM Disconnect Asset Sub-process" on page 168](#) ["SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process" on page 171](#).

## Logical Delete Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It converts any item of a product instance that has a Deleted action code to an Update action code and an Inactive status. Logical Delete only works with a product instance of the Order type. In other words, the Integration Object passed in the SiebelMessage is based on the Order Entry business object.

### Arguments

#### *ObjectId*

[in] ID of the object to be loaded. If this optional argument is provided, the SiebelMessage argument is ignored. (Optional)

#### *SiebelMessage*

[in] Primary argument if there is no Object Id. This must be an Order type input. (Required)

*SiebelMessage*

[out] Result of the logical delete.

### **Remarks**

This method takes a complex object as input. It goes through the hierarchy of the complex object and changes all Deleted action codes to Update. Then, it sets the status of the associated line items to Inactive.

### **See Also**

Workflow ["SIS OM Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile"](#) on page 156.

## **Assign New Service IDs Method**

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It assigns a service point ID, associated with a specified premise, to each item of the input complex product for which the service type of the service point matches the service type of the product.

If a free service point is not available for a product component, a service point is not assigned to it. On the other hand, if multiple service point IDs are available for the same service type, the system will pick one of them randomly.

### **Arguments**

*Premise AddressId*

[in] Row Id of the address to which services are moving. (Required)

*SiebelMessage*

[in] Service Point Ids are set for this product instance. (Required)

*SiebelMessage*

[out] Product instance with the newly assigned service point IDs. (Required)

### **Returns**

New service point IDs.

### **Remarks**

#### **User Properties**

This method uses the following user properties:

- Line Item Integration Object Service Account Id Field Name
- Line Item Integration Object Service Point Id Field Name

- Line Item Integration Object Service Type Field Name
- Service Point BC Address Id Field Name
- Service Point BC Owner Account Id Field Name
- Service Point BC Service Point Id Field Name
- Service Point BC Service Type Field Name
- Service Point Business Component Name
- Service Point Business Object Name

## Convert Product Instance Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It converts a product instance of one type to another; for example, quote to order.

### Arguments

#### *Output Object Type*

[in] The input product instance to be converted to this type. (Required)

#### *Object Id*

[in] ID of the object to be converted. If Object Id is specified Input, Input Object Type must also be specified. (Optional)

#### *Input Object Type*

[in] Type of the input product instance. (Only required if Object Id is specified)

#### *SiebelMessage*

[in] Product instance to be converted. Not required if Object Id and Input Object Type are specified. (Optional)

#### *Generate New Item Integration Id*

[in] If the line item's action code is Add (Y or N value), this argument forces the system to generate a new unique ID for the Asset Integration Id field. (Optional)

**NOTE:** The Integration Id and the Service Id are not the same thing. The Integration Id is the internal unique identifier. The Service Id is a free text field that the user may use for telephone numbers, and so on.

#### *Upsert Result*

[in] Insert and synchronize the resulting product instance back to the database (Y or N value). (Optional)

*SiebelMessage*

[out] Product instance to be converted. Not required if the Object Id and Input Object Type are specified.

### Returns

Product type change.

### Remarks

This method uses the mapping of integration component fields as user properties. The name has the following format:

Source Int Obj Name.Source Int Comp Name:Dest Int Obj Name.Dest Int Comp Name Map #

The user property value format is:

[Src FieldName]:[Dest Field Name]

**NOTE:** Src Field Name must be unique for each group of user property mappings.

### See Also

Workflow ["SIS OM Quote To Order PMT Version"](#) on page 152.

## Get Instance Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It gets a complex product instance from the Product Configurator.

### Arguments

*Object Id*

[in] Key used to return the preloaded complex asset. The argument Instance Id returned by the Reconfigure Product Instance method is passed here.

*Instance Id*

[out] Passed to this method as output from Reconfigure Product Instance, this key is used to return a complex asset that was loaded into the Product Configurator when Reconfigure Product Instance was invoked.

*SiebelMessage*

[out] Complex product instance returned by the Configurator runtime session.

### Returns

Complex product instance.

### See Also

Method ["Reconfigure Product Instance Method"](#) on page 221 and workflows ["SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item"](#) on page 149, ["SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item"](#) on page 153, ["SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow"](#) on page 165.

## Get Profile Attribute Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It returns the value of the specified attribute of the user profile.

### Arguments

*Profile Attribute Name*

[in] Name of the user profile attribute to be retrieved.(Required)

*Profile Attribute Value*

[out] Value of the profile attribute. This value is NULL if the attribute is not set. (Required)

### Returns

Value of the user profile attribute.

### See Also

Method ["Set Profile Attribute Method"](#) on page 228 and workflows ["SIS OM Active Quote Sub-Process"](#) on page 163, ["SIS OM Active Order Sub-Process"](#) on page 164.

## Is Fully Exploded Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It checks a product instance to determine if an explode operation is required, based upon the value specified by `ExplodeOnField`. If the field value is greater than one for any component of the product instance, the method returns N. Otherwise, the method returns Y.

### Arguments

*RootItemId*

[in] If supplied, only subcomponents of the root item specified by `RootItemId` are considered for Explode processing. (Optional)

*ExplodeOnField*

[in] Field (name) that is checked to determine whether explosion is necessary. (Required)

#### *ConditionFieldNames*

[in] Comma separated list of integration component field names. (Optional)

#### *ConditionValues*

[in] Comma separated list of values. Standard Siebel expressions (such as LookupValue) are supported in each comma separated value. (Optional)

#### *SiebelMessage*

[in] Product instance to be checked for explode processing. (Required)

#### *Result*

[out] Y or N flag indicating whether the input SiebelMessage has been exploded or not. (Required)

### **Returns**

Y or N.

### **Remarks**

Primarily used in the Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile workflow, this method double checks to determine if the service order line items created from the Siebel database (earlier in the workflow) have been fully exploded or not. In other words, it determines whether all line items and the subcomponents were previously processed by the Explode method.

### **See Also**

Methods ["Explode Method" on page 206](#) and ["Explode Siebel Object Method" on page 209](#).

## **Is Module Licensed Method**

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It determines whether or not the specified module is licensed.

### **Arguments**

#### *Module Name*

[in] Name of the module being checked. (Required)

#### *Result*

[out] Y if the module is licensed; otherwise N.

### **Returns**

Y (module licensed) or N (module not licensed).



### See Also

Method ["ViewCart Method"](#) on page 244.

## Merge Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It merges the components of one integration object (product instance) under the header of another integration object.

**NOTE:** Before this method is called, [Set Product Instance](#) must be called to cache the target product instance.

### Arguments

*SiebelMessage*

[in] Source product instance to be merged. (Required)

*SiebelMessage*

[out] Merged product instances. (Required)

### Returns

A single product instance containing the merged assets.

### Remarks

This method receives two property sets as input, each containing a complex object with hierarchical assets, quotes, or order items. It copies all the line items from the source complex object to the target (cached) complex object. The target object's header information (quote or order headers) are retained. The merged complex object is returned in an output argument property set.

### See Also

Method ["Set Product Instance Method"](#) on page 227 and workflow ["SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 171.

## Quote To Revenue Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It generates revenue line items for each line item in a quote that matches the criteria specified by the input conditions. The line items are associated with the opportunity from which the quote was created.

## Arguments

### *SiebelMessage*

[in] Contains a product instance hierarchy.

### *RootItemId*

[in] Root item ID.

### *ConditionFieldNames*

[in] Names of fields whose value must equal that specified by *ConditionValues*. In these cases, the quote line item will be converted to a revenue line item. In the SIS OM Update Revenue workflow, the condition fields are action code, price type and extended amount.

### *ConditionValues*

[in] Values that fields must have to satisfy the condition. In the SIS OM Update Revenue workflow, the action code must be Add or Update, price type must be One-Time or Recurring, and extended amount must be non-zero.

### *ExcludedFieldsUserPropertyTag*

[in] User properties tag identifying fields that should not be copied from the quote line item to the revenue line item.

## Returns

Revenue line items.

## Remarks

The following discussions list user properties associated with this method. They also indicate how the method adds revenue and determines: revenue amount, revenue dates, number of revenue items, frequency of revenue line items, annually recurring charges, quarterly recurring charges, monthly recurring charges, weekly recurring charges, and daily recurring charges.

## User Properties

This method used the following user properties:

- **Quote To Revenue.Quote Item.Due Date Field.** Quote Line Item business component field that determine the first date on which revenue will be added. Out of the box, this the quote line item is due date.
- **Quote To Revenue.Quote Item.Amount Field.** Quote Line Item business component field used as the revenue amount. Out of the box this is the extended amount.
- **Quote To Revenue.Quote Item.Item Price Field.** Quote Line Item business component field containing the item price.
- **Quote To Revenue.Quote Item.Price Type Field.** Quote Line Item business component field containing the price type.
- **Quote To Revenue.Quote Item.Unit of Measure Field.** Quote Line Item business component containing the unit of measure.

- **Quote To Revenue.Quote Item.Occurrence Field.** Quote Line Item business component field containing the number of revenue occurrences.
- **Quote To Revenue.Quote Item.Extended Quantity Field.** Quote Line Item business component field containing the extended quantity.
- **Quote To Revenue.Quote Item.Description Field.** Quote Line Item business component field containing the description.
- **Quote To Revenue.Quote Item.Product Id Field.** Quote Line Item business component field containing the product Id.
- **Quote To Revenue.Revenue.Quantity Field.** Revenue business component field containing the quantity.
- **Quote To Revenue.Revenue.Quotable Field.** Revenue business component field indicating whether the revenue is quotable.
- **Quote To Revenue.Revenue.Date Field.** Revenue business component field containing the revenue date.
- **Quote To Revenue.Revenue.Price Field.** Revenue business component field containing the product price.
- **Quote To Revenue.Revenue.Revenue Field.** Revenue business component field containing the revenue.
- **Quote To Revenue.Revenue.Description Field.** Revenue business component field containing the description.
- **Quote To Revenue.Revenue.Product Id Field.** Revenue business component field containing the product Id.

### Adding Revenue

This method:

- Adds revenue only for quote line items with an New or Modified action code. Quote line items '-', and Delete action codes are ignored.
- Adds revenue only for quote line items that have an extended amount not equal to zero.  
Negative extended amounts are added to revenue.
- Adds revenue only for price types that are one-time and recurring. It is not calculated for usage.
- Adds revenue on a per product component basis (per quote line item).

### Determining Revenue Amount

This method:

- Uses a user property to define the Quote Item business component field that is used for the revenue amount. The default is the Extended Amount field.
- Uses the value of this field as the revenue amount for all periods.

### Determining Revenue Dates

This method:

- Uses a user property to define the Quote Item business component field that, in turn, is used to calculate the first revenue date. The default is the Due Date field.

### **Determining Number of Revenue Items**

The forecast number of revenue occurrences for a product is defined in product administration. When a quote line item is created the number of forecast revenue occurrences is copied from the product into the quote line item. There, it can be overridden through the UI or by configuration.

This method:

- Adds revenue for products with one time price types once on the due date of the quote line item, regardless of the number of occurrences defined.
- Adds revenue for products with recurring price types as many times as the number of occurrences.

### **Determining Frequency of Revenue Line Items**

This method:

- Adds revenue as it occurs (weekly, monthly, quarterly or annually) instead of grouping it into monthly totals.
- Adds the first revenue, for any quote line item, on the due date plus one UoM.

The following UoMs that are allowed: Per Year, Per Month, Per Quarter, Per Week, and Per Day.

### **Determining Annually Recurring Charges**

This method:

- Adds revenue on the same day every year, starting on the end date of the first period. For example, if the due date is 7/11/01, the default date of the first billing cycle is 7/11/02 and revenue is added for 7/11/02, 7/11/03 and so on, for as many occurrences as the quote line item specifies.

If the end date of the first period falls on the 2/29, the revenue date for non-leap years is 2/28.

### **Determining Quarterly Recurring Charges**

This method:

- Adds revenue on the same day every three months, starting on the date of the first billing cycle, the default value of which is 3 months after the quote line item due date. For example, if the due date is 7/11/01, revenue is added for 10/11/01, 1/11/02, 4/11/02, 7/11/01 and so on, for as many occurrences as product specifies.

If the end date of the first period falls on the 29th, 30th or 31st of a month, the revenue date for months that have fewer days is the last day of the same month.

### **Determining Monthly Recurring Charges**

This method:

- Adds revenue on the same day every month, starting on the date of the first billing cycle which defaults to one month after the quote line item due date. For example, if the due date is 7/11/01, revenue is added for 8/11/01, 9/11/01 and so on, for as many occurrences as the product specifies.

If the due date falls on the 29th, 30th or 31st of a month, the revenue date for months with fewer days is the last day of the same month.

### Determining Weekly Recurring Charges

This method:

- Adds revenue every 7 days starting on the date of the first billing cycle which defaults to 7 days after the quote line item due date. For example, if the due date is 7/11/01, revenue is added for 7/18/01, 7/25/01, 8/1/01 and so on, for as many occurrences as the product specifies.

### Determining Daily Recurring Charges

The method:

- Adds revenue every day, starting on the date of the first billing cycle which defaults to one day after the quote line item due date. For example, if the due date is 7/11/01, revenue is added for 7/12/01, 7/13/01, 7/14/01 and so on, for as many occurrences as the product specifies.

## Reconfigure Product Instance Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It displays, in the Configurator UI, the asset that was passed to the Product Configurator as input.

**NOTE:** This method does not return the asset updated by Product Configurator. Instead an event occurs for the primary business component when the Done button is clicked. At that time, you can invoke the Get Instance method to obtain the updated asset from the Product Configurator.

### Arguments

#### *Complex Product*

[in] This product instance, based on Asset, is used as input to the Configurator.

#### *Row Id*

[in] Row Id of the Asset.

#### *Event Name*

[in] Name of the event that is triggered when the user clicks the Done button.

#### *Primary Business Component Name*

[in] Name of the primary business component of the business object associated with the workflow that calls this method. This business component receives the event specified by Event Name.

*Pricing Business object*

[in] Name of the business object to be used for pricing.

*Price List Id*

[in] ID of the price list to be used.

*Currency Code*

[in] Currency code.

*Exchange Date*

[in] Date of the exchange.

*Instance Id*

[out] Returned key. This output can be passed (as input) to the Get Instance method to return a complex asset, loaded into the Product Configurator.

**Returns**

Product Configurator display of the reconfigured complex asset.

**Remarks**

**User Properties**

This method applies the user properties listed below.

**NOTE:** This view must use the same business object as the workflow that invokes the Reconfigure Product Instance method.

■ Asset Integration Object Name:

Name of Integration Object based on Asset business components.

■ Complex Product Runtime View Name

Name of view for Product Configurator UI.

**Getting an Updated Asset**

This method does not return the Asset updated by the Product Configurator. Instead, an event occurs for the primary business components, passed as parameters to this method, when the Product Configurator's Done button is clicked. At that time, the system can call PMT business service method Get Complex Asset to obtain the updated Asset from the Product Configurator.

**See Also**

Method ["Get Instance Method"](#) on page 214 and workflows ["SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item"](#) on page 149, ["SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item"](#) on page 153, and ["SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow"](#) on page 165.

## Reset Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It clears out all cached product instances.

### Arguments

None

### Returns

There are no cached products.

### Remarks

This method has no input or output arguments.

### See Also

Methods ["Set Product Instance Method"](#) on page 227, ["Set Output Header Method"](#) on page 227 and workflows ["SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item"](#) on page 149, ["SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item"](#) on page 153, ["SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow"](#) on page 165, ["SIS OM Disconnect Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 168, ["SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 171, ["SIS OM Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile"](#) on page 156.

## Retrieve Next Object From List Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

Given a hierarchical integration object with multiple root components at the second level (for example, Asset), this method returns an integration object that contains the header, one root component, its children and their attributes.

### Arguments

*SiebelMessage*

[in] Integration object to retrieve the root component from. (Required)

*Integration Id*

[out] Integration Id of the retrieved root integration component. (Optional)

*Object Id*

[out] Row Id of the retrieved root integration component. (Optional)

*Remaining Number of Objects*

[out] Number of root integration components left in the input integration object. (Required)

*SiebelMessage*

[out] New instance of the integration object containing the header and first root component (including its children and attributes) of the object retrieved. (Required)

### **Remarks**

This method can be called multiple times with the same input argument, each time it returns the next root component. And, it is used in conjunction with Update Multi Object List to form a loop control mechanism.

### **See Also**

Method ["Update Multi Object List Method"](#) on page 229.

## **Set Action Method**

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It sets the Action Code field of all items in the hierarchy of a given product instance to the specified value.

### **Arguments**

*Action Code*

[in] Set the action codes of all line items in the hierarchy SiebelMessage to this value. (Required)

*SiebelMessage*

[in] Product instance whose action code will be updated. (Required)

*SiebelMessage*

[out] Updated product instance.

### **Returns**

Newly set action codes.

### **Remarks**

This method takes a property set containing a complex item as input along with an action code parameter. It goes through the complex item and sets the action code to the value of the action code argument.

### **See Also**

Methods ["Set Field Value Method"](#) on page 225 and ["Set Multiple Field Values Method"](#) on page 226.



## Set Exception Error Message Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It is called from the workflow to get the localized error message text that is associated with the input error code.

### Arguments

#### *Error Code*

[in] Error code defined in the repository. (Required)

#### *Error Message*

[out] Localized error message text. (Required)

### Remarks

#### Dependencies

Strings corresponding to the supplied Error Code must be defined in the Siebel Database. The seven predefined error messages are defined in the Siebel repository with the message key prefixed with `IDS_SISOM_ERR_MOVEWF`.

### See Also

.

## Set Field Value Method

It is used optionally to configure conditions so that updates are only run on the subset of items in the hierarchy that satisfy the conditions.

### Arguments

#### *Field Name*

[in] Name of the field to be changed. (Required)

#### *SiebelMessage*

[in] Product instance. (Required)

#### *Value*

[in] Literal. (Required)

#### *ConditionFieldNames*

[in] Comma separated list of integration component field names. (Optional)

#### *ConditionValues*

[in] Comma separated list of values. Standard Siebel expressions (such as LookupValue) are supported. (Optional)

#### *Generate new Id*

[In] Y/N flag indicating whether to generate a new Row Id for each item.

#### *SiebelMessage*

[out] Updated product instance. (Required)

### **Returns**

New field values.

### **Remarks**

As input, this method receives one property set containing a complex object and two strings representing a field name and field value. The method goes through the line items hierarchy of the comp[lex object wrapped by the property set, and for each item that satisfies the optional conditions, locates the named field of each line item, and sets it to the value provided.

### **See Also**

Methods ["Set Action Method" on page 224](#), ["Set Multiple Field Values Method" on page 226](#), and workflows ["SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow" on page 165](#). ["SIS OM Disconnect Asset Sub-process" on page 168](#), ["SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process" on page 171](#).

## **Set Multiple Field Values Method**

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It sets specified fields to the given values for all items in the product instance.

### **Arguments**

#### *Field Names*

[in] Comma separated list of names of fields whose values are to be set. (Required)

#### *Values*

[in] Comma separated list of values to which the fields are set. (Required)

#### *SiebelMessage*

[in] Product instance hierarchy whose field values are to be set. (Required)

#### *ConditionFieldNames*

[in] Comma separated list of integration component field names. (Optional)

#### *ConditionValues*

[in] Comma separated list of values. Standard Siebel expressions (such as LookupValue) are supported. (Optional)

#### *SiebelMessage*

[out] Updated product instance. (Required)

#### **Returns**

Product instance with updated field values.

#### **See Also**

Methods ["Set Action Method"](#) on page 224 and ["Set Field Value Method"](#) on page 225.

## **Set Output Header Method**

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It caches the output header that will be used by the Delta method.

#### **Arguments**

##### *SiebelMessage*

[in] Product instance containing the header to be used for the Delta method output.

#### **Returns**

Cached output header.

#### **See Also**

Methods ["Delta Method"](#) on page 181, ["Set Action Method"](#) on page 224, ["Set Product Instance Method"](#) on page 227, and workflows ["SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item"](#) on page 149, ["SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item"](#) on page 153, ["SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow"](#) on page 165, ["SIS OM Disconnect Products & Services Process"](#) on page 167, ["SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 171.

## **Set Product Instance Method**

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It caches a product instance that will be used as an input arguments for Apply and Delta methods.

### Arguments

*SiebelMessage*

[in] Product instance being saved. (Required)

### Returns

Cached product instance.

### See Also

Methods "[Delta Method](#)" on page 181, "[Apply Method](#)" on page 192, "[Set Output Header Method](#)" on page 227, and workflows "[SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item](#)" on page 149, "[SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item](#)" on page 153, "[SIS OM Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile](#)" on page 156, "[SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow](#)" on page 165, "[SIS OM Disconnect Asset Sub-process](#)" on page 168, "[SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process](#)" on page 171.

## Set Profile Attribute Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It assigns values to attributes in a user profile.

### Arguments

*Profile Attribute Name*

[in] Name of the attribute being set.(Required)

*Profile Attribute Value*

[in] Value to which the attribute will be set. A NULL value clears the attribute. (Required)

### Returns

New attribute values.

### See Also

Method "[Get Profile Attribute Method](#)" on page 215.

## Synchronize Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It synchronizes product instance to the database. Optionally, this method also reprices the instance after it is synchronized by calling the Pricing Manager Reprice-RepriceAll. This method calls the EAI Siebel Adapter Upsert method to synchronize.

## Arguments

### *Message Id*

[in] Passed through to the EAI Siebel Adapter Upsert method. (Optional)

### *PrimaryRowId*

[in] Row Id of the business component to be synchronized. (Required)

### *Reprice*

[in] Y/N flag indicating whether to reprice or not. (Optional)

### *RootItemId*

[in] If this input is given, only reprice the root line item with a Siebel Object Row Id that corresponds to this RootItemId and any new line items that were created from it after an Explode operation. (Optional)

### *SiebelMessage*

[in] Product instance to be synchronized.

### *StatusObject*

[in] Passed through to EAI Siebel Adapter Upsert method. (Optional)

### *SiebelMessage*

[out] Synchronized product instance.

## Returns

Synchronized product instance.

## Remarks

This method is used when the object to be synchronized has modified quantity or price fields, requiring a repricing. It is primarily used after Explode.

## See Also

Method ["Explode Method"](#) on page 206 and workflows ["SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item"](#) on page 149, ["SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item"](#) on page 153, ["SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow"](#) on page 165, ["SIS OM Disconnect Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 168, ["SIS OM Suspend / Resume Asset Sub-process"](#) on page 171, ["SIS OM Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile"](#) on page 156.

# Update Multi Object List Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

After a root integration component and its children are stripped from the integration object, this method (in conjunction with Retrieve Next Object From List) returns the resulting integration object.

### Arguments

*SiebelMessage*

[out] Integration object left behind after the first root component is retrieved. (Required)

### Returns

New integration object.

### Remarks

This method is used in conjunction with Retrieve Next Object From List to form a loop control mechanism.

### See Also

Method ["Retrieve Next Object From List Method"](#) on page 223.

## Update Order Line Item Completed Flag Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It sets the Order Item Processed Flag of the root order line item to Y, if its status and that of all its child items is Complete, Rejected, or `.`.

**NOTE:** This method only works with product instance of type Order.

### Arguments

*SiebelMessage*

[in] Product instance being updated. (Required)

*Synchronize*

[in] Defaults to N. (Optional)

*Update Order Items*

[in] Comma separated list of row IDs for line items that were updated by this method.

### Returns

Order Item Processed Flag set to Y or N.

### See Also

Workflow ["SIS OM Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile"](#) on page 156.

## Get Cfg Button Click Information Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It is used to identify whether a user clicks on the Cancel or Done button from Complex Product View.

**Business Object:** (Required) Name of business that Business Component belongs to.

### Argument:

#### Result

[Out] Either "Cancel" or "Done" depending on the button clicked by the user. The actual string value returned is specified by the "Cancel Button Return" and "Done Button Return" user properties respectively. (Required).

### See Also

Methods ["Reconfigure Product Instance Method"](#) on page 221, ["Get Instance Method"](#) on page 214, and workflows ["SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item"](#) on page 149, ["SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item"](#) on page 153, ["SIS OM Edit Complex Asset Workflow"](#) on page 165.

## Refresh Business Component Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It reexecutes all instance of the specific buscomp to get data from the database.

### Arguments

#### *Business Object Name*

[in] Name of business the buscomp belongs to.

#### *Business Component Name*

[in] Name of the buscomp you want to refresh with data from database.

#### *Refresh Result*

[out] Either 'Fail', 'NoRefresh', or 'Succeed'. 'Fail' means the method could not refresh because of insufficient input argument. 'NoRefresh' means the method did not find any instance of the specified buscomp. 'Succeed' means it refreshed at least one instance of the specified buscomp. (Optional)

### See Also

Workflows ["SIS OM Ungroup Quote"](#) on page 148, ["SIS OM Ungroup Order"](#) on page 149, ["SIS OM Quote To Order PMT Version"](#) on page 152.

## Invoke BC Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

This is a generic method that allows one to invoke a Business Component-based method from Workflow. A Business Service method is invoked from a workflow by default. This method acts as a bridge to allow one to pass in the Business Component name and the method name, along with the parameters and return value required from Workflow to the Business Component specified.

### Arguments

#### *BC Name*

[in] A string to specify the name of Business Component on which you want to invoke its method. (Required)

#### *Method Name*

[in] A string to specify the name of the method in the specified Business Component that you want to invoke. (Required)

#### *Param 0*

[in] A string to pass in the first argument to the method. (Optional)

#### *Param 1*

[in] A string to pass in the second argument to the method. (Optional)

#### *Param 2*

[in] A string to pass in the third argument to the method. (Optional)

#### *Param 3*

[in] A string to pass in the fourth argument to the method. (Optional)

#### *Return Property Name*

[out] A string to pass out the output of the method. (Optional)

## Iterate Process For Selected Rows Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It loops through all the selected rows in the active business component and invokes the specified workflow for each row. Input arguments to the workflow come from the fixed inputs plus the values of specified field names are transformed into workflow argument names based upon the specified mappings.



## Arguments

### Fields

[In] Comma separated list of field names in the active business component. (Required)

### Fixed Inputs

[In] Comma separated list of name-value pairs. (Required)

For example,

```
'Active Document Id='+[&Active Document Id] '+'Price List Id='+[&Price List Id]
```

### Mappings

[In] Comma separated list of field mappings of the form [Bus Comp Field Name]=[Workflow Input Argument]

### Process

[In] Name of the workflow process to be initiated for each row of the active business component. (Required)

### Delete Connection

[In] Y / N flag indicating whether to cascade the process to the connections associated with selected nodes in a network scenario. (Optional)

### See Also

Methods ["Get Selected Row Count Method"](#) on page 233, ["Get First Selected Row Values Method"](#) on page 234, and workflows ["SIS OM Modify Products & Services Process"](#) on page 161, ["SIS OM Disconnect Products & Services Process"](#) on page 167, ["SIS OM Suspend / Resume Products & Services Process"](#) on page 170.

## Get Selected Row Count Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It returns the number of rows selected in the active business component, that is, the business component that initiated the workflow.

## Argument

### Row Count

[Out] The number of selected rows. (Required)

### See Also

["Iterate Process For Selected Rows Method"](#) on page 232 and ["Get First Selected Row Values Method"](#) on page 234, and workflow ["SIS OM Modify Products & Services Process"](#) on page 161.

## Get First Selected Row Values Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

Queries the active business component for a given set of field values for the first selected row. The fields to be retrieved are specified by the Fields argument. If the Mapping input argument is specified the values of the fields in the query are remapped to different field names in the output property set.

### Arguments

#### *Fields*

[In] Comma separated list of field names in the active business component for which values are to be retrieved.

#### *Mappings*

[In] Comma separated list of mappings of the form [Bus Comp Field Name]=[Property Set Field Name]

#### *SiebelMessage*

[Out] Property set containing the requested values.

### See Also

Methods [“Iterate Process For Selected Rows Method”](#) on page 232, [“Get Selected Row Count Method”](#) on page 233, and workflow [“SIS OM Modify Products & Services Process”](#) on page 161.

## Ungroup Method

This is one of the [Product Manipulation Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

Ungroup is a business component-based version of Explode. It creates multiple instances of a product. The number of instances is determined by the value of the field specified by the Quantity Field argument. For each new instance, the value of the Quantity Field is set to 1. An existing instance is considered for ungrouping only if it meets the conditions specified by the Condition Field Names and Condition Values arguments. The updated business component instances are written to the database.

### Arguments

#### *Line Item BC Name*

[In] Name of the line item business component to be ungrouped. (Required)

#### *Extended Attribute BC Name*

[In] Name of the XA business component associated with the line item business component. (Required)

*Quantity Field*

[In] Name of field in the line item business component that is used to determine the number of instances to be created. (Required)

*Header Id*

[In] Row Id of the header business component instance. (Required)

*Header Id Field*

[In] Name of the field in the header business component that stores the Row Id. (Required)

*Root Item Id*

[In] Id of the root item in the line item business component. (Required)

*Root Item Id Field*

[In] Name of the field in the line item business component that stores the Root Item Id. (Required)

*Parent Item Id Field*

[In] Name of the field in the line item business component that stores the Parent Item Id. (Required)

*Line Number Field*

[In] Name of the field in the line item business component that stores the Line Number. (Required)

*XA Header Id Field*

[In] Name of the field in the XA business component that stores the Header Id. (Required)

*XA Parent Root Id Field*

[In] Name of the field in the XA business component that stores the Parent Root Id. (Required)

*XA Line Item Id Field*

[In] Name of the field in the XA business component that stores the Line Item Id. (Required)

*Condition Field Names*

[In] Comma separated list of field names. An existing instance is ungrouped only if the conditions specified by Condition Field Names and Condition Values are met. (Optional)

*Condition Values*

[In] Comma separated list of condition values. Standard Siebel expressions (such as LookupValue) are supported. An existing instance is ungrouped only if the conditions specified by Condition Field Names and Condition Values are met. (Optional)

*Integer Fields to Split*

[In] Comma separated list of fields of type Integer for which the value is to split between the multiple instances. For example, if an instance has a field value of 12 and a quantity of 4, the integer field will have a value of 3 in each of the multiple instances. (Optional)

*Number Fields to Split*

[In] Comma separated list of fields of type Number for which the value is to split between the multiple instances. (Optional)

**See Also**

Methods ["Explode Method" on page 206](#) and ["Explode Siebel Object Method" on page 209](#), and workflows ["SIS OM Ungroup Order" on page 149](#), ["SIS OM Ungroup Order" on page 149](#).

## Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods

The Order Entry Toolkit (OET) business service is a set of methods that allow order management processes to be implemented in eSales workflows. The business service includes methods to manipulate the user's account information, validate payment information, and navigate to eSales views. These methods summarized in [Table 18](#).

Table 18. EOT Methods

Method	Comment
<a href="#">CreateAccount Method on page 237</a>	Creates a new account, associates it with the User and associates specified addresses to that account. The method also sets a specified field in the Quote BC, if it is required.
<a href="#">CreateOrder Method on page 238</a>	Converts a quote to an order.
<a href="#">GetBCCount Method on page 239</a>	Gets the number of rows and first row ID in a BC for the input Search Spec. If Parent and Child BC names are provided, the search spec is applied to the Parent BC. If no Parent BC is provided, the Search Spec in applied to the one input BC.
<a href="#">GotoView Method on page 240</a>	Navigates to the view specified in the input argument.
<a href="#">SelectPrimary Method on page 240</a>	Selects a record in the picklist into a field.
<a href="#">SetLIAccounts Method on page 241</a>	Rolls down the Service and Billing Account field values from the Quote or Order Header to the line items, if the value is NULL.
<a href="#">SubmitOrder Method on page 241</a>	Submits the Pending Order by changing the Order Header and Line Items status to Open. Optionally, sets the Order Id to a defined (user property) Profile Attribute.
<a href="#">ValidatePayment Method on page 242</a>	Validates the payment method, verifying that only one payment method at a time is specified for a quote.

Table 18. EOT Methods

Method	Comment
<a href="#">ValidateQuote Method on page 243</a>	Sets the Invalid Flag for all line items that have a base price = 0 except those that have an Action Code = Delete.
<a href="#">ViewCart Method on page 244</a>	Navigates to the CME Shopping Cart if licensed; otherwise, to the standard Shopping Cart.

## CreateAccount Method

This is one of the [Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It creates a new account, associates it to the user and associates specified addresses to that account. The method also sets a specified field in the Quote BC, if it is required.

### Arguments

*Account Name*

[in] Name of the new account. (Required)

*Account Type*

[in] Type of new account. (Required)

*Address Id 1*

[in] ID of an existing address associated with the new account. (Optional)

*Address Id 2*

[in] ID of an existing address associated with the new account. (Optional)

You can add more Address Id's by incrementing the number.

*Quote Account Field*

[in] Quote business component field to be populated with the Account Id. (Optional)

*New Account Id*

[out] Row Id of the newly created account.

### Returns

Row Id of new account.

### Remarks

#### User Properties

This method uses the following user properties:

■ **CreateAccount: Account BC Name**

Name of the business component that is used to create the new account. Default = Account.

■ **CreateAccount: Account and Address Intersection BC Name**

Name of the business component based on the Account-Address Intersection table that is used to associate addresses to the new account. Default = Com Account Address Intersection.

■ **CreateAccount: Intersection Account Field Name**

Account foreign key field in the intersection business component. Default = Account Id.

■ **CreateAccount: Intersection Address Field Name**

Address foreign key in the intersection business component. Default = Address Id.

This method invokes AssociateAccountToUser method in the CUT Account Administration Toolkit Service business service.

**See Also**

Methods ["GetBCCount Method" on page 239](#) and ["ValidatePayment Method" on page 242](#).

## CreateOrder Method

This is one of the [Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It converts a quote to an order.

### Arguments

*Quote Id*

[in] Quote identifier. (Required)

*Return Error Code*

[in] Direction to return an error code. (Optional)

*Order Id*

[out] Order identifier. (Optional)

*Error Message*

[out] Error message. (Optional)

### Returns

A new Order.

### Remarks

### Dependencies

This method first invokes the Shopping Service's CreateOrder Method, and then it invokes SubmitOrder.

## GetBCCount Method

This is one of the [Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It gets the number of rows and first row ID in a BC for the input Search Spec. If Parent and Child BC names are provided, the search spec is applied to the Parent BC. If no Parent BC is provided, the Search Spec is applied to the one input BC.

### Arguments

#### *BC Name*

[in] Name of the business component whose rows will be counted. (Required)

#### *BC SearchSpec*

[in] Free text search specification. (Optional)

#### *BusObj Name*

[in] The business components belongs to this business object. If a BusObj Name is not specified, the business service business object is used. (Optional)

#### *Parent BC Name*

[in] Name of the parent business component to which the search criteria is applied. (Optional)

#### *Field Name*

[in] Field name to be used as additional input for the search specification. (Optional)

#### *Field Value*

[in] Value to be used as additional input for the search specification. (Optional)

#### *Count*

[out] Number of rows. (Optional)

#### *First RowId*

[out] First rowId of the rows. (Optional)

### Returns

Number of rows and first rowId.

### See Also

Method "[CreateAccount Method](#)" on page 237.

## GotoView Method

This is one of the [Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It navigates to the View specified in the input argument.

### Arguments

*View*

[in] Name of the view to navigate to. (Required)

## SelectPrimary Method

This is one of the [Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It selects a record in the picklist into a field.

### Arguments

*PickList Field*

[in] Name of the picklist field. (Required)

*Primary Row Id*

[in] Primary rowId (Optional)

*Primary ID Field*

[in] Name of the field that stores the primary Id. Not required if Primary Row Id is specified. (Optional)

*Business Component Name*

[in] Name of the business component to which the field belongs. (Optional)

*IntersectionTable Field*

[in] Name of the field in the intersection table that stores the primary Id. (Optional)

*Execute BusComp at Finish*

[in] TRUE if Base BC is executed after this operation; otherwise, FALSE. The default is TRUE (case sensitive). (Optional)

*ReturnVal*

[out] Success or Fail.

### Returns

Success or Fail.



## SetLIAccounts Method

This is one of the [Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It rolls down the Service and Billing Account field values from the Quote or Order Header to the line items, if the value is NULL.

### Arguments

*Parent BC Name*

[in] Parent BC name. (Required)

*Parent Row Id*

[in] Parent row Id. (Required)

*Line Item BC Name*

[in] Line item BC name. (Required)

### Returns

New line item values.

### See Also

Method ["GetBCCount Method"](#) on page 239 and workflows ["SIS OM Auto Select Order Billing and Service Accounts"](#) on page 156.

## SubmitOrder Method

This is one of the [Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It submits the Pending Order by changing the Order Header and Line Items status to Open. Optionally, it sets the Order Id to a defined (user property) Profile Attribute.

### Arguments

*Order Id*

[in] Order identifier. (Required)

*Parent Fieldmap LHS*

[in] LHS value of the field map used by user properties for field names in the Parent business component. (Optional)

*Parent Fieldmap RHS*

[in] RHS value of the field map used by user properties for field values in the Parent business component. (Optional)

#### *Line Item Fieldmap LHS*

[in] LHS value of the field map uses by user properties for field names in the Line Item business component. (Optional)

#### *Line Item Fieldmap RHS*

[in] RHS value of the field map uses by user properties for field names in the Line Item business component. (Optional)

#### *Return Error Code*

[in] Direction to return an error code. (Optional)

#### *Error Message*

[out] Error message. (Optional)

### Remarks

#### User Properties

The following user properties are associated with this method:

- Order Field|Value FieldMap X—Field map value. See the next user property definition.
- Order Item Field|Value FieldMap X—Field map value.  
Numbers starting from 1 and increments of 1 should replace X. The last FieldMap should have a value of End.
- SubmitOrder: Order Header Buscomp—Default = Order Entry - Order.
- SubmitOrder: Line Item Buscomp—Default = Order Entry - Line Items.
- SubmitOrder: Line Item Set Field Condition. Default is Status=FS\_ORDER\_STATUS Pending.

## ValidatePayment Method

This is one of the [Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It validates the payment method, verifying that only one payment method at a time is specified for a quote.

### Arguments

#### *Bill To Account*

[in] The account whose payment is being validated. (Required)

#### *Credit Card Number*

[in] Credit card number associated with the account. (Required)

*Credit Card Type*

[in] Type of credit card associated with the account. (Required)

*Expiration Month*

[in] Expiration month of the credit card. (Required)

*Expiration Year*

[in] Expiration year of the credit card. (Required)

*PO Number*

[in] PO number for the account. (Optional)

*Return Error Code*

[in] Direction to return an error code. (Optional)

*Error Message*

[out] Error message. (Required)

**Returns**

Error messages.

**See Also**

Method ["CreateAccount Method"](#) on page 237.

## **ValidateQuote Method**

This is one of the [Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It sets the Invalid Flag for all line items that have a base price = 0 except those that have an Action Code = Delete.

**Arguments**

*Quote Id*

[in] Quote identifier. (Required)

*Return Error Code*

[in] Direction to return an error code. (Optional)

*Invalid*

[out] Indicates an invalid quote. (Optional)

*Error Message*

[out] Error message. (Optional)

*ReturnVal*

[out] Indicates that the quote is valid. (Optional)

### Remarks

#### Dependency

Invokes the Shopping Service's ValidateQuote method.

## ViewCart Method

This is one of the [Order Entry Toolkit Business Service Methods](#).

It navigates to the CME Shopping Cart if licensed; otherwise, to the standard Shopping Cart.

### Arguments

No input or output arguments.

### Remarks

The following user properties may be specified for the Shopping Service:

- Module Name

Licensed Module Name. Default = CME eSales.

- Default Shopping Cart View

Name of the view to display if a module is not specified or if the module is specified but not licensed. Default = Current Quote View (eSales).

- Licensed Shopping Cart View

Name of the view to display if the module identified by module name is licensed. Default = CUT Current Quote View (eSales).

### See Also

Method ["ValidatePayment Method"](#) on page 242.

# Index

## A

**Account Summary view, example (screen capture)** 19

### accounts

- active quote for current account, subprocess workflow 163, 164
- credit auto-approval limit, changing 61
- credit checks, skipping 61
- quote, determining if active quote for current account 161
- quote, identifying active quote for 167
- quotes, developing for 65
- setting up, about 24

### Accounts screen

- customer profile, views used to display 18
- quotes and orders, about creating from 34

**action codes, about using and list of** 20

### active quotes

- activating current quote, workflow 160
- activating, subprocess workflow 163, 164

### activities

- line item, adding to 116
- line items, about reviewing and example 16

### activity plan templates

- creating (procedure) 34
- line item, associating with 115
- setting up, about 34

**activity plans, about reviewing line items and example** 16

**Adding Revenue method, about** 219

**Advisor, using to add line items** 73

**agreement, converting a quote to** 111

**annual recurring charges, calculation** 220

**application services interfaces (ASIs)**

- See also order ASIs; quote ASIs
- about and use of 44
- extending 55
- workflows 63

### Apply method

- complex order example 196
- exception handling 195
- hybrid asset order, creating 194
- new installation example 197
- overview 192
- role of service item keys 184
- service item unique keys 194
- Set Product Instance method, about and

arguments 227

updates to absent items 198

updating parent component, example 200

**Asset Integration Object Name user property, about** 179

### asset-based ordering

See also *individual assets entries*

about and example 14

action codes, about using and list of 20

Auto Asset button, about using 20

basic concepts, about 17

business scenario 135, 136

customer profile, role of 18

cycle of events (diagram) 18

delta quotes and delta orders, definition and example 19

exploding and ungrouping, example 11

modify order, about 20

new quotes and orders, about 19

orders, about multiple open orders 19

quote-to-order explode functionality, about 19

workflows, about and types of 21

**asset-based ordering, setting up**

See also *individual assets entries*

about 38

asset-based ordering workflows, making desired changes 39

server component parameter, setting 38

tasks. list of 38

workflows, activating 39

### assets

See also *individual assets entries* and installed assets

completed order line items, creating from workflow 156

complex asset workflow 165

deleting, workflow 158

disconnecting 145

disconnecting selected assets, workflow 167

hybrid asset order example, Apply method 194

increasing quantities, example 183

modifying attributes, workflow 158

modifying, about 20

orders. applying to open and pending to asset workflow 168

- order-to-asset process, workflow 153
  - quotes, using to modify 138
  - reconfiguring 139
  - updated asset, method 222
  - assets, Delta method**
    - See also *individual assets entries*
    - adding copies of asset example 188
    - asset generation example 186
    - disconnecting an asset example 187
    - overview 181
  - Assign New Service IDs method, about and arguments** 212
  - ATP (availability-to-promise) software**
    - See availability-to-promise (ATP) software
  - ATP Action Parameter, setting in the Quote and Order business component properties** 50
  - ATP ASI Testing script, about** 54
  - Attribute Integration Component Name user property, about** 179
  - Attribute Item Map user property, about** 179
  - Auto Asset button, about using** 20
  - Auto Asset feature, using to modify service profile** 145
  - AutoQuote feature, using from an opportunity** 67
  - availability checking**
    - ASIs, extending 55
    - ATP ASI testing script, about 54
    - availability fulfillment methods, checking 50
    - availability information, preventing rollup 54
    - extension of returned data, about 56
    - external ATP Check business service user properties, verifying 52
    - Quote and Order business component properties, setting the ATP Action Parameter 50
    - UI terms, customizing 56
    - Web services, configuring 52
  - availability fulfillment methods, checking** 50
  - Availability Information Rollup, disabling** 54
  - availability summary date, turning off computation of** 55
  - availability-to-promise (ATP) software**
    - Application Services Interfaces, about 44
    - ASIs, extending 55
    - Availability Information, disabling 54
    - credit card payments, authorizing and settling 103
    - credit card payments, authorizing manually 104
    - item availability, about checking 91
    - payment history, checking 104
    - payments, approving 101
    - payments, changing status of 101
    - payments, viewing 102
    - purchase order, checking credit for 103
    - quote or order, checking and reserving items 91
    - quote or order, unreserving items 92
    - refunds, entering 105
    - setting up, about 49
    - splitting items to accommodate different requested dates 93
    - UI customizations, optional 56
- B**
- Billing Account field, about using to roll down values** 241
  - Browse Catalog feature, using to add line items** 73
  - Business Component-based method, about using to invoke method from workflow** 232
  - Business Process Designer, about using to modify the order management process** 17
  - business services, administrator procedures**
    - FINS Validator service, about invoking from a workflow 130
    - FINS Validator service, invoking from a Runtime event 128
    - validation history, viewing 133
    - validation rule set, importing and exporting 123
    - validation rule set. about defining 123
- C**
- Calculate Taxes button, using to calculate taxes** 90
  - Cancel button, about Get Cfg Button Click Information method** 231
  - carriers**
    - costs, about impacting 16
    - field, described 26
  - cart, about ViewCart method** 244
  - catalogs**
    - browsing to add line items 73
    - deals, viewing 83
    - employees, about assigning to 26
    - product catalogs, about setting up 26
  - charts**
    - quotes, displaying charts analyzing quotes 112

- quotes, list of charts used to analyze 111
- checks, Payment Detail Field for (table)** 97
- component quantity edits, about making** 36
- contacts**
  - quotes, developing for 65
  - setting up, about 24
- Contacts screen, about creating quotes and orders from** 34
- Convert Product Instance method, about and arguments** 213
- CreateAccount method**
  - about and arguments 237
  - user properties 237
- CreateOrder method, about and arguments** 238
- credit auto-approval limit, changing** 61
- credit cards**
  - authorization and verifications 29
  - credit card types, about 29
  - credit card types, adding new types 30
  - payment type, adding 30
  - payments, authorizing and settling 103
  - payments, authorizing manually 104
  - processing, about and integration with third-party systems 29
- credit checking**
  - credit auto-approval limit, changing 61
  - credit check interface request (ASI), extending 62
  - customizing credit checks 60
  - employees, restricting which can administer 62
  - purchase order credit checking 57
  - setup procedures, required 58
  - skipping credit checks 61
  - software, integration overview 44
  - turning off 60
  - user properties, modifying 60
  - Web services, configuring 58
  - workflow processes, activating 59
- customer confirmation workflows** 36
- customer order management**
  - See Siebel Customer Order Management
- customer profile**
  - Account Summary view example (screen capture) 19
  - using, about 18
  - views used to display 18
- customer service profile, about updating** 144
- customers**
  - acknowledgements, about setting up workflows 35
  - product availability, checking 16

- customizable products, editing order line items** 141

## D

- daily recurring charges, calculation** 221
- deals, reviewing** 83
- deleting**
  - line items from orders or quotes 78
  - validation rule set, about 123
- delivery method, about impacting costs** 16
- Delta Line Item Compare Field user property, about** 179
- Delta method**
  - action types 185
  - asset generation example 186
  - delta orders, detailed description 181
  - disconnecting an asset 187
  - increasing quantities of asset component 183
  - preinvocation and processing 182
  - product structure changes, identifying (example) 190
  - role of service item keys 184
  - Set Product Instance method, about and arguments 227
  - updating an asset, example 185
- Delta Order button, about disabling** 38
- delta orders**
  - definition of and example 19
- Delta Quote button, about disabling** 38
- delta quotes**
  - asset generation example 186
  - definition of and example 19
  - disconnecting an asset example 187
  - edit asset, workflow 149
  - ignoring invalid instruction 199
  - update to absent item 198
  - updating parent component 200
- Delta XA Compare Field user property, about** 180
- Determining Annually Recurring Charges method** 220
- Determining Daily Recurring Charges method** 221
- Determining Frequency of Revenue Line Items method** 220
- Determining Monthly Recurring Charges method** 220
- Determining Number of Revenue Items method** 220
- Determining Quarterly Recurring Charges method** 220
- Determining Revenue Amount method** 219

**Determining Revenue Dates method** 219  
**Determining Weekly Recurring Charges method** 221

**disconnecting assets, workflow** 167  
**discounts**

- default discount, applying to line items for a quote 85
- head-level discount percentage, adding to an order 85
- line items, spreading across 87
- manual discount, about applying 84
- manual discount, applying to entire quote or order 86
- manual discount, applying to individual line item 86
- price list, about offering 15

**Done button, about Get Cfg Button Click Information method** 231

## E

### employee order management

- asset, disconnecting 145
- asset, using quote to modify 138
- order line items, editing 141
- orders, revising submitted orders 142, 143, 144
- orders, submitting 142
- quotes, converting to orders 141
- quotes, creating new quote 136
- quotes, updating an opportunity from 140
- service profile, about updating 144

### employees

- catalogs, about assigning to 26
- credit checking, restricting which can administer 62

**error message, about Set Exception Error Message method** 225

### Explode method

- copying components example 208
- excluded columns 208
- overview 206

### Explode Siebel Object method

- about and arguments 209
- user properties, list of 210

### exploding

- Explode method, about and arguments 206
- Explode Siebel Object method, about and argument 209
- Is Fully Exploded method, about using 215
- quote-to-order explode functionality, about 19

**External ATP Check business service user properties, verifying** 52

**External Credit Check ASI user properties, verifying** 58

## F

**failed items, eliminating (example)** 204  
**Find Orders method, about and arguments** 210

### FINS Validator service

- Runtime event, defining 128
- validation history, viewing 133
- workflow, about invoking from 130

**forecast, including quote items in forecast** 109

### fulfillment system

- See *also* fulfillment system, integration
- credit card payments, authorizing manually 104
- credit card payments. authorizing and settling 103
- items, about reserving 91
- payment history, checking 104
- payments, approving 101
- payments, changing the status of 101
- payments, viewing 102
- purchase order, checking credit for 103
- quote or order, checking and reserving items 91
- quote or order, unreserving items 92
- refunds, entering 105
- splitting items to accommodate different requested dates 93

### fulfillment system, integration

- See *also* fulfillment system
- availability-to-promise software, integration overview 49

**functional workflows, about** 21

## G

**Get Cfg Button Click Information method, about and arguments** 231

**Get Instance method, about and arguments** 214

**Get Order Status ASI, about workflow** 63

**Get Profile Attribute method, about and arguments** 215

**GetBCCount method, about and arguments** 239

**GotoView method, about and arguments** 240

## H

**Header Detail form, example of data used for line items** 70



**Header Details form, about providing order information** 114  
**Header Integration Component Name user property, about** 180  
**Header Map user property, about** 180  
**header-level discount percentage, adding to an order** 85

**I****installed assets**

customizable products, reconfiguring 139  
 disconnecting 145  
 quotes, using to modify 138  
 using quotes to modify 138

**integration**

See also *individual integration entries*  
 information on 17  
 workflows, about setting up and activating 31

**integration ID, definition of** 12**integration object**

See also *individual integration entries*  
 Merge method, about using to merger components 217  
 Update Multi Object List, about and arguments 229

**integration, preparing for**

See also *individual integration entries*  
 Application Services Interfaces (ASIs), about and use of 44  
 ASI Integration Points in the Ordering Process (diagram) 45  
 ASIs, extending 55  
 Availability Information Rollup, disabling 54  
 availability-to-promise (ATP) software, overview 49  
 purchase order credit checking applications, about 57  
 quote and order ASI, setting up 46  
 strategy 43  
 UI customizations, optional 56

**Internal order type, about** 31**invalid instructions, ignoring (example)** 199**inventory locations, about setting up** 31**Invoke BC method, about and arguments** 232**Is Fully Exploded method, about and arguments** 215**Is Module Licensed method, about and arguments** 216**L**

**licensed, Is Module Licensed method** 216

**life cycle diagram, order management** 12

**Line Item Detail form, price and discount fields for line items (table)** 82

**Line Item Integration Component Name user property, about** 180

**Line Item Map user property, about line items** 181

deleting from orders or quotes 78

renumbering 77

splitting to accommodate different requested dates 93

**Line Items list, price and discount fields for line items (table)** 82

**Logical Delete method, about and arguments** 211

**LOV (lists of values), table** 39

**M**

**mailing address, defining for check payment** 30

**manual discount**

applying, about 84

default discount, applying to line items for a quote 85

individual line item, applying to 86

line items, spreading across 87

quote or order, applying to 86

**Merge method, about and arguments** 217

**modify order, about** 20

**monthly recurring charges, calculation** 220

**More Info form, about providing order information** 114

**multiple-quantity products, exploding and ungrouping** 12

**O****OET**

See order entry toolkit business service methods

**opportunities**

AutoQuote, using 67

quotes, developing from 65

quotes, updating from 108

revenue, transferring from quote to 140

**order ASIs**

order management processes, overview 46

Web services, setting up 47

workflows, activating 49

**Order business component property, setting the ATP Action Parameter** 50

**Order Detail view, about header summaries** 15

**Order Entry Toolkit business service**

- methods**
  - about and table 236
  - CreateAccount method 237
  - CreateOrder method 238
  - GetBCCount method 239
  - GotoView method 240
  - SelectPrimary method 240
  - SetLIAccounts method 241
  - SubmitOrder method 241
  - ValidatePayment method 242
  - ValidateQuote method 243
  - ViewCart method 244
- Order Header Details form** 114
- Order header summary form, about providing order information** 114
- Order Integration Object Name user property, about** 181
- Order Item Processed Flag, setting the root order line item** 230
- order line items**
  - assets, about using Auto Asset button to convert to 20
  - editing 141
  - editing workflow 153
- order management**
  - See *also* Order Entry Toolkit business service methods; order management, setting up; Siebel Customer Order Management
  - basic concepts 15
  - business scenario 12
  - end user business scenario 135, 136
  - functional overview 11
  - life cycle diagram 12
  - life cycle tasks, list of 11
- order management, setting up**
  - See *also* order management
  - accounts and contacts, setting up 24
  - activity plan templates, about setting up 34
  - activity plan templates, creating (procedure) 34
  - asset-based ordering, setting up 38
  - credit card authorization and verifications 29
  - credit card processing, about and integration with third-party systems 29
  - credit card types. about 29
  - employees, about assigning catalogs to 26
  - integration, about setting up and activating workflows 31
  - inventory locations, setting up 31
  - lists of values (table) 39
  - mailing address, defining for check payment 30
  - order statuses, defining 32
  - order types. about setting up and initial order types (table) 31
  - payment methods, defining new methods 30
  - payment terms, defining 28
  - price list, setting up 25
  - product catalogs, about setting up 26
  - product selection templates, creating 33
  - products, about checking availability of 35
  - products, setting up 25
  - quotes and orders, about creating from accounts and contracts 34
  - salespeople, setting up 25
  - shipping information, about setting up 26
  - Siebel Tools, using to configure screens 36
  - tasks, list of 23
  - tax calculations, setting up 27
  - workflows, new or modified 35
- order status**
  - defining 32
  - updating, integration overview 45
- order submission, integration overview** 44
- order template, setting up** 33
- order types**
  - new order type, defining 32
  - setting up, about and initial order types (table) 31
- Order Web service**
  - inbound, setting up 48
  - outbound, setting up 47
- orders**
  - See *also individual orders entries*
  - accounts and contracts, creating from 34
  - action codes, about and list of 20
  - approvals, about setting up workflows 35
  - asset, applying open and pending orders to selected asset 165
  - asset-based ordering, about using in 19
  - defined 113
  - end user's, about working with 14
  - fulfillment status, about checking 16
  - Get Order Status ASI workflow, about 63
  - modify order, about 20
  - multiple open orders, about 19
  - order confirmation, sample workflows 36
  - product selection methods 15
  - quotes, converting to 141
  - revising submitted orders 142, 143, 144
  - revising, about 17
  - service and billing account fields, filling 156
  - Submit Order Status ASI workflow, about 63
  - submitting 142
  - submitting workflow 155
- orders, creating**
  - See *also* payments; pricing; product selection

- templates; quotes, creating, and *individual orders entries*
  - about and tasks 68
  - availability, checking and reserving items 91
  - catalog, browsing to add line items 73
  - components, about changing quantities 79
  - items, about reserving 91
  - line items, deleting 78
  - package container line item, adding 75
  - package, adding a product to 75
  - payment information, entering for 94
  - product, adding using Add Items 72
  - products, adding one at a time 72
  - products, customizing 78
  - quote, converting to an order 110
  - renumbering line items 77
  - requested dates, splitting items to accommodate 93
  - service product, adding to 77
  - shipping information, adding 88
  - ship-to address, varying 89
  - Siebel Advisor, using to add line items 73
  - starting an order 69
  - template, using to add all items 74
  - template, using to add some items 74
  - unreserving items 92
  - write-in products, adding 74
- orders, working with**
- See also *individual orders entries*
  - activity plan template, associating with a line item 115
  - approving 116
  - existing order, accessing 114
  - forms, providing basic information about 114
  - individual activity, adding to a line item 116
  - order history, viewing 117
  - order status, checking 117
  - order, submitting 114
  - returns, processing 118
  - revising 117
- Order-to-Asset process**
- Apply method, about and arguments 192
  - orders, applying active and unprocessed to asset 153
  - service order to asset workflow 156
- orphaned items, eliminating (example)** 206

## P

### package

- package container line item, adding 75
- package price, defined 75
- package, defined 75

- product, adding 75

### payment method, about ValidatePayment method

242

### payments

- See also orders, creating; quotes, creating
- approving 101
- history, checking 104
- mailing address, defining for check payment 30
- methods, list of and example 16
- new payment terms, defining 28
- payment fields by payment method (tables) 95
- payment information, adding for quotes or orders 93
- payment methods, defining new payment methods 30
- payment terms, changing settings 29
- status, changing 101
- viewing 102

### pending items, eliminating (example)

204

### Pending Order, about Submit Order

method 241

### PMT

- See Product Manipulation Toolkit business service

### price lists, about setting up

25

### Pricer, and pricing and discounts

15

### pricing

- See also orders, creating; quotes, creating
- deals, viewing associated with quote or order 83
- default discount, applying to line items for a quote 85
- discount, spreading across line items 87
- excluding items from repricing 84
- header-level discount percentage, adding to an order 85
- individual line items, price and discount fields (table) 82
- manual discount, about applying 84
- manual discount, applying to entire quote or order 86
- manual discount, applying to individual line item 86
- price list, about adding products to 15
- product and pricing administration, about 17
- Quote and Order header, showing total price for order or quote, 80
- quotes and orders, factors based on 79
- recalculating prices, manually 84
- recalculating, about when 83

### product catalogs

- browsing to add line items 73

- setting up, about 26
  - product instance, about Synchronize method and arguments** 228
  - Product Manipulation Toolkit business service**
    - about and table of methods 175
    - Apply method 192
    - Assign New Service IDs 212
    - Convert Product Instance 213
    - Delta method 181
    - Explode method 206
    - Explode Siebel Object 209
    - Find Orders method 210
    - Get Cfg Button Click Information method 231
    - Get Instance method 214
    - Get Profile Attribute, about and arguments 215
    - Invoke BC method 232
    - Is Fully Exploded method 215
    - Is Module Licensed method 216
    - Logical Delete method 211
    - Merge method 217
    - Quote to Revenue method 217
    - Reconfigure Product Instance method 221
    - Refresh Business Component method 231
    - Reset method 223
    - Retrieve Next Object from List method 223
    - Set Action method 224
    - Set Exception Error Message method 225
    - Set Field Value method 225
    - Set Multiple Field Values method 226
    - Set Output Header method 227
    - Set Product Instance method 227
    - Set Profile Attribute method 228
    - Synchronize method 228
    - Trim method 203
    - Update Multi Object List method 229
    - Update Order Line Item Completed Flag method 230
    - user properties 179
  - product selection templates**
    - creating 33
    - making changes to template 74
    - private product template, creating 74
    - quote or order, using to add all items 74
    - quote or order, using to add some items 74
  - product structure, identifying changes in, Delta method example** 190
  - products**
    - availability, about checking 35
    - availability, checking 16
    - component, deleting 78
    - components, about changing quantities in
      - customizable product 79
      - customizing 78
      - deleting from quote or order 78
      - forecasting, including quote items in 109
      - items, about reserving 91
      - multiple-quantities, ungrouping and exploding 12
      - package, adding to 75
      - product and pricing administration, about 17
      - product selection methods, list of 15
      - quote or order, checking availability and reserving items 91
      - quote or order, unreserving items 92
      - setting up, about 25
      - smart part numbers, about using to identify products 17
      - splitting items to accommodate different requested dates 93
      - write-in products, adding 74
  - promise, setting up to check availability of** 35
  - purchase order**
    - credit, checking for 103
    - Payment Detail fields for (table) 99
  - purchase order credit checking**
    - about 57
    - ASI for credit check interface request, extending 62
    - credit auto-approval limit, changing 61
    - credit check, skipping 61
    - credit checking, turning off 60
    - customizing credit checks 60
    - employees, restricting which can administer 62
    - setup procedures, required 58
    - user properties, modifying 60
    - Web services, configuring 58
    - workflow processes, activating 59
  - Purchase Order type, about** 31
- ## Q
- quarterly recurring charges, calculation** 220
  - query order status, integration overview** 45
  - quote ASIs**
    - order management processes, overview 46
    - Web services, setting up 47
    - workflows, activating 49
  - Quote business component property, setting the ATP Action Parameter** 50
  - Quote Detail view**
    - header summaries, about 15
  - Quote Header Summary, about and fields** 80
  - Quote header summary, about and screen**

- example** 107
- Quote Integration Object Name user property, about** 181
- quote line items**
  - asset-based ordering, editing 139
  - SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item workflow, using to edit 149
- quote submission, integration overview** 45
- Quote To Revenue method**
  - adding revenue 219
  - Determining Annually Recurring Charges 220
  - Determining Daily Recurring Charges 221
  - Determining Frequency of Revenue Line Items 220
  - Determining Monthly Recurring Charges 220
  - determining number of revenue items 220
  - Determining Quarterly Recurring Charges 220
  - determining revenue amount 219
  - determining revenue dates 219
  - Determining Weekly Recurring Charges 221
  - overview and arguments 217
  - user properties, list of 218
- Quote Web service**
  - inbound, setting up 48
  - outbound, setting up 47
- quotes**
  - account, determining if user has active quote for current account 163, 164
  - accounts and contracts, creating from 34
  - action codes, about and list of 20
  - activating current quote, workflow 160
  - active quote, determining for current account 161
  - approvals, about setting up workflows 35
  - asset-based ordering, about using in 19
  - billing items and service items, displaying associated with 160
  - defined 107
  - end user's, about working with 14
  - installed asset, modifying 138
  - new quote, creating 136
  - order, about converting to 16
  - orders, converting to 141
  - product selection methods 15
  - quote verifications, about setting up workflows 35
  - quote-to-order explode functionality, about 19
  - revenue, transferring to opportunities 140
  - Submit Quote ASI workflow, about 63
  - ValidateQuote method, about and arguments 243

**quotes, creating**

See *also* orders, creating; payments; pricing; product selection templates; quotes, working with

- availability, checking and reserving items 91
- catalog, browsing to add line items 73
- components, about changing quantities 79
- items, about reserving 91
- line items, deleting 78
- opportunities, generating from (AutoQuote) 67
- package container line item, adding 75
- package, adding a product to 75
- payment information, entering for 94
- product, adding using Add Items 72
- products, adding one at a time 72
- products, customizing 78
- renumbering line items 77
- requested dates, splitting items to accommodate 93
- service product, adding to 76
- shipping, adding information 88
- ship-to address, varying 89
- Siebel Advisor, using to add line items 73
- starting a quote 65
- tasks, list of 65
- template, using to add all items 74
- template, using to add some items 74
- unreserving items 92
- verifying quotes 68
- write-in products, adding 74

**quotes, working with**

- agreement, converting to 111
- charts analyzing quotes, displaying 112
- charts, list of to analyze quotes 111
- existing quote, accessing 109
- forecast, including quotes in 109
- opportunities, updating from quotes 108
- order, converting quote to 110
- Quote header summary, about and screen example 107
- revising a quotes 110
- verifying 108

**Quote-to-Order process**

- quotes, converting to orders 141

**R****Reconfigure Product Instance method**

- about and arguments 221
- updated asset, getting 222
- user properties 222

**recurring charges calculation, Quote To Revenue method** 220

- Refresh Business Component method, about and arguments** 231
  - refunds, entering** 105
  - renumbering line items** 77
  - Repair order type, about repricing** 32
    - about automatically 83
    - excluding items from 84
    - manually recalculating prices 84
  - Reset method, about and arguments** 223
  - Retrieve Next Object from List method, about and arguments** 223
  - returns, processing** 118
  - revenue**
    - Quote to Revenue method, about 217
    - quote, transferring to opportunity 140
  - revenue methods**
    - Adding Revenue method 219
    - Determining Annually Recurring Charges 220
    - Determining Daily Recurring Charges method 221
    - Determining Frequency of Revenue Line Items 220
    - Determining Monthly Recurring Charges method 220
    - Determining Number of Revenue Items 220
    - Determining Quarterly Recurring Charges 220
    - Determining Revenue Amount 219
    - Determining Revenue Dates method 219
    - Determining Weekly Recurring Charges method 221
  - revising**
    - order 117
    - submitted orders 142, 143, 144
  - RMA (Return Material Authorization) Advance Exchange order type, about** 31
  - RMA Repair Return order type, about** 31
  - RMA Return order type, about** 31
- S**
- Sales Order button, about using** 16
  - Sales order type, about** 32
  - sales representative**
    - order fulfillment status, about checking 16
    - order, about revising 17
    - product availability, checking 16
  - salespeople, setting up** 25
  - Select Primary method, about and arguments** 240
  - server component parameter, setting** 38
  - Service Account field, about using to roll down values** 241
  - service items**
    - Explode method, excluded columns 208
    - unique keys, role of 184
  - service items unique keys** 194
  - Service Order button, about using** 16
  - Service order type, about** 32
  - service product**
    - order, adding to 77
    - quote, adding to 76
  - service profile**
    - Auto Asset, using to modify 145
    - updating, about 144
    - workflow, displaying active quote 158
  - service profile, redisplaying**
    - quote, activating current 160
    - service items or billing items associated with current quote, displaying 160
  - Set Action method, about and arguments** 224
  - Set Exception Error Message method, about and arguments** 225
  - Set Field Value method, about and arguments** 225
  - Set Multiple Field Values method, about and arguments** 226
  - Set Output Header method, about and arguments** 227
  - Set Product Instance method, about and arguments** 227
  - Set Profile Attribute method, about and arguments** 228
  - SetLIAccounts method, about and arguments** 241
  - shipment freight calculation, about shipping** 27
    - charges, calculating 89
    - information, about setting up and defining shipping information 26
    - information, adding for quote or order 88
    - ship-to address, varying by line item 89
    - ship-to information, about impacting costs 16
  - Shipping Method field, described** 26
  - Shipping Terms field, described** 26
  - shopping cart, about ViewCart method** 244
  - Siebel Advisor, using to add line items** 73
  - Siebel Application Services Interfaces (ASIs), about and use of** 44
  - Siebel Business Process Designer**
    - order management process, about using to modify 17
    - workflows, about using to modify 22

**Siebel Customer Order Management**

- See also order management
- asset-based order, about and example 14
- quotes and orders, about working with 14
- setting up, about 13
- third-party application, about integrating with 14
- workflows, about and types of 21

**Siebel eSales, list of customer confirmation workflows** 36**Siebel Pricer, and pricing and discounts** 15**Siebel Tools**

- component quantity edits, about making 36
- order management user properties (table) 37
- screens and views, about using to configure 36

**SIS OM Active Quote Sub-Process**

**workflow** 163, 164

**SIS OM Apply Completed Service Order Line Item to Service Profile workflow** 156**SIS OM Auto Select Order Billing and Service Accounts workflow** 156**SIS OM Disconnect Asset Subprocess workflow** 168**SIS OM Disconnect Products & Services Process workflow** 167**SIS OM Edit Complex Asset workflow** 165**SIS OM Edit Delta Quote Line Item workflow** 149**SIS OM Edit Service Order Line Item workflow** 153**SIS OM Go to Products and Services Sub-Process workflow** 160**SIS OM Modify Products & Services Process workflow** 161**SIS OM New Products & Services Process workflow** 158**SIS OM Profile Process workflow** 160**SIS OM Submit Order Process workflow** 155

smart part numbers, about 17

stored values, Payment Detail fields for (table) 100

Submit button, about working 38

Submit Order Status ASI, about workflow 63

Submit Quote ASI, about workflow 63

SubmitOrder method, about and arguments 241

Synchronize method, about and arguments 228

**T****tax calculation**

- about calculating 15
- manually calculating 90

**tax calculations, setting up**

- entering taxes manually 27
- third-party system, using to calculate taxes 27

**Tax Calculator business service, about** 27**tax exempt information, about entering and filing** 28**Taxware software, using to calculate** 90**templates**

- activity plan template, associating with a line item 115
- activity plan templates, about setting up 34
- activity plan templates, creating (procedure) 34
- order templates, setting up 33
- product selection template, creating private product template 74
- product selection template, making changes to template 74
- product selection template, using to add all items to quote or order 74
- product selection template, using to add some items to quote or order 74
- product selection templates, creating 33

**third-party software**

- availability-to-promise (ATP) software, integrating 49
- returned data, about extending 56
- taxes, using to calculate 90

**Trim method**

- eliminating orphaned items, example 206
- eliminating pending and failed items, example 204
- overview 203

**U****UI customization for ASIs** 56**ungrouping and exploding multiple-quantity products** 12**unreserving items in a quote or order** 92**Update Multi Object List method, about and arguments** 229**Update Order Line Item Completed Flag, about and arguments** 230**user interface workflows, about** 22**user profiles, about Set Profile Attribute method and arguments** 228**user properties**

- External ATP Check business service user

- properties, verifying 52
- External Credit Check ASI user properties, verifying 58
- purchase order credit checking, modifying 60
- table 37

## V

- ValidatePayment method, about and arguments** 242
- ValidateQuote method, about and arguments** 243
- validation rule set**
  - deleting, about 123
  - importing and exporting 123
- Verify menu option, about choosing** 79
- view, about GotoView method** 240
- ViewCart method, about and arguments** 244

## W

- Web order type, about** 32
- Web services**
  - availability checking, configuring 52
  - purchase order credit checking, configuring 58
- weekly recurring charges, calculation** 221
- wire transfers, Payment Detail field for (table)** 100
- workflow processes, activating** 59
- Workflow Product Configuration View user property, about** 181
- workflows**
  - about and types of 21

- asset-based ordering workflows, making desired changes 39
- assets, applying open and pending orders to 168
- assets, creating from completed order line items 156
- examples of changes 35
- Get Order Status ASI, about 63
- order line items, editing 153
- orders, applying open and pending to assets 165
- orders, filling service and billing account fields 156
- orders, submitting 155
- Quote and Order screens, about using to set up actions 35
- quote line items, editing 149
- quote, activating current 160
- quotes, determining active quote for current account 161
- quotes. determining if user has an active quote for current account 163, 164
- service items or billing items associated with current quote, displaying 160
- service profile, displaying active or newly created quote 158
- service, disconnecting 167
- Siebel Business Process Designer, about using to modify 22
- Submit Order Status ASI, about 63
- Submit Quote ASI, about 63
- write-in products, adding to quote or order** 74